Mellanox OFED for Linux

User's Manual

Rev 1.5

www.mellanox.com

NOTE:
THIS HARDWARE, SOFTWARE OR TEST SUITE PRODUCT (“PRODUCT(S)”) AND ITS RELATED DOCUMENTATION ARE PROVIDED BY MELLANOX TECHNOLOGIES “AS-IS” WITH ALL FAULTS OF ANY KIND AND SOLELY FOR THE PURPOSE OF AIDING THE CUSTOMER IN TESTING APPLICATIONS THAT USE THE PRODUCTS IN DESIGNATED SOLUTIONS. THE CUSTOMER'S MANUFACTURING TEST ENVIRONMENT HAS NOT MET THE STANDARDS SET BY MELLANOX TECHNOLOGIES TO FULLY QUALIFY THE PRODUCTO(S) AND/OR THE SYSTEM USING IT. THEREFORE, MELLANOX TECHNOLOGIES CANNOT AND DOES NOT GUARANTEE OR WARRANT THAT THE PRODUCTS WILL OPERATE WITH THE HIGHEST QUALITY. ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL MELLANOX BE LIABLE TO CUSTOMER OR ANY THIRD PARTIES FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PAYMENT FOR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THE USE OF THE PRODUCT(S) AND RELATED DOCUMENTATION EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Mellanox Technologies
350 Oakmead Parkway, Suite 100
Sunnyvale, CA 94085
U.S.A.
www.mellanox.com
Tel: (408) 970-3400
Fax: (408) 970-3403

Mellanox Technologies, Ltd.
PO Box 586 Hermon Building
Yokneam 20692
Israel
Tel: +972-4-909-7200
Fax: +972-4-959-3245

© Copyright 2010. Mellanox Technologies, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
Mellanox®, BridgeX®, ConnectX®, InfiniBlast®, InfiniBridge®, InfiniHost®, InfiniPCI®, InfiniRISC®, InfiniScale®, and Virtual Protocol Interconnect are registered trademarks of Mellanox Technologies, Ltd.
CORE-*Direct*, FabricIT, and PhyX are trademarks of Mellanox Technologies, Ltd.

All other marks and names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents 3
List of Tables 9
Revision History 11
Preface 12
Intended Audience 12
Documentation Conventions 13
Typographical Conventions 13
Common Abbreviations and Acronyms 13
Related Documentation 15
Support and Updates Webpage 15
Chapter 1 Mellanox OFED Overview 17
1.1 Introduction to Mellanox OFED 17
1.2 Introduction to Mellanox VPI Adapters 17
1.3 Mellanox OFED Package 17
1.3.1 ISO Image 17
1.3.2 Software Components 18
1.3.3 Firmware 18
1.3.4 Directory Structure 18
1.4 Architecture 19
1.4.1 mthca HCA (IB) Driver 20
1.4.2 mlx4 VPI Driver 20
1.4.3 Mid-layer Core 20
1.4.4 Open-FCoE 20
1.4.5 ULPs 20
1.4.6 MPI 21
1.4.7 InfiniBand Subnet Manager 22
1.4.8 Diagnostic Utilities 22
1.4.9 Performance Utilities 22
1.4.10 Mellanox Firmware Tools 22
1.5 Quality of Service 23
Chapter 2 Installation 25
2.1 Hardware and Software Requirements 25
2.1.1 Hardware Requirements 25
2.1.2 Software Requirements 25
2.2 Downloading Mellanox OFED 26
2.3 Installing Mellanox OFED 26
2.3.1 Pre-installation Notes 26
2.3.2 Installation Script 27
2.3.2.1 mlnxofedinstall Return Codes 29
2.3.3 Installation Procedure 30
2.3.4 Installation Results 36
2.3.5 Post-installation Notes 37
2.4 Updating Firmware After Installation 37
2.5 Uninstalling Mellanox OFED 38
Chapter 3 Working With VPI 39
3.1 Port Type Management 39
3.2 InfiniBand Driver 40
3.3 Ethernet Driver 40
3.3.1 Overview 40

3.3.2 Loading the Ethernet Driver 40
3.3.3 Unloading the Driver 40
3.3.4 Ethernet Driver Usage and Configuration 41
3.4 Fibre Channel over Ethernet 42
3.4.1 Overview 42
3.4.2 Installation 43
3.4.3 FCoE Basic Usage 43
3.4.3.1 FCoE Configuration 44
3.4.3.2 Starting FCoE Service 45
3.4.3.3 Stopping FCoE Service 46
3.4.4 FCoE Advanced Usage 46
3.4.4.1 Manual vHBA Control 47
3.4.4.2 Creating vHBAs That Use PFC 48
3.4.4.3 Creating vHBAs That Use Link Pause 49

Chapter 4 IPoIB 51

4.1 Introduction 51
4.2 IPoIB Mode Setting 51
4.3 IPoIB Configuration 51
4.3.1 IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP 51
4.3.1.1 DHCP Server 52
4.3.1.2 DHCP Client (Optional) 52
4.3.2 Static IPoIB Configuration 53
4.3.3 Manually Configuring IPoIB 54
4.4 Subinterfaces 55
4.4.1 Creating a Subinterface 55
4.4.2 Removing a Subinterface 56
4.5 Verifying IPoIB Functionality 56
4.6 The ib-bonding Driver 56
4.6.1 Using the ib-bonding Driver 57
4.7 IPoIB Performance Tuning 58
4.8 Testing IPoIB Performance 58

Chapter 5 RoCE 61

5.1 Overview 61
5.2 Software Dependencies 61
5.3 General Guidelines 61
5.4 Ported Applications 61
5.5 GID Tables 62
5.5.1 Priority Pause Frames 62
5.6 Using VLANs 62
5.7 A Detailed Example 63

Chapter 6 RDS 69

6.1 Overview 69
6.2 RDS Configuration 69

Chapter 7 SDP 71

7.1 Overview 71
7.2 libsdp.so Library 71
7.3 Configuring SDP 71
7.3.1 How to Know SDP Is Working 72
7.3.1.1 Alternative Method – Using the sdpnetstat Program 72
7.3.2 Monitoring and Troubleshooting Tools 73
7.4 Environment Variables 74
7.5 Converting Socket-based Applications 74
7.6 BZCopy – Zero Copy Send 82
7.7 Using RDMA for Small Buffers 82
7.8 Testing SDP Performance 82

Chapter 8 SRP 85
8.1 Overview 85
8.2 SRP Initiator 85
8.2.1 Loading SRP Initiator 85
8.2.2 Manually Establishing an SRP Connection 85
8.2.3 SRP Tools - ibsrpdm and srp_daemon 86
8.2.4 Automatic Discovery and Connection to Targets 88
8.2.5 Multiple Connections from Initiator IB Port to the Target 89
8.2.6 High Availability (HA) 90
8.2.7 Shutting Down SRP 91

Chapter 9 NFSoRDMA 93
9.1 Overview 93
9.2 Installation 93
9.3 Check RDMA and NFS Setup 95
9.4 NFS/RDMA Setup 95

Chapter 10 MPI 97
10.1 Overview 97
10.2 Prerequisites for Running MPI 97
10.2.1 SSH Configuration 97
10.3 MPI Selector - Which MPI Runs 99
10.4 Compiling MPI Applications 99
10.5 OSU MVAPICH Performance 100
10.5.1 Requirements 100
10.5.2 Bandwidth Test Performance 100
10.5.3 Latency Test Performance 101
10.5.4 Intel MPI Benchmark 101
10.6 Open MPI Performance 103
10.6.1 Requirements 103
10.6.2 Important Note on RoCE Support 103
10.6.3 Bandwidth Test Performance 103
10.6.4 Latency Test Performance 104
10.6.5 Intel MPI Benchmark 105

Chapter 11 Quality of Service 107
11.1 Overview 107
11.2 QoS Architecture 108
11.3 Supported Policy 108
11.4 CMA features 109
11.5 IPoIB 109
11.6 SDP 109
11.7 RDS 109
11.8 SRP 110
11.9 OpenSM Features 110

Chapter 12 OpenSM – Subnet Manager 111
12.1 Overview 111
12.2 opensm Description 111
12.2.1 opensm Syntax 111
12.2.2 Environment Variables 117
12.2.3 Signaling 118
12.2.4 Running opensm 118
12.2.4.1 Running OpenSM As Daemon 119
12.3 osmtest Description 119
12.3.1 Syntax 119
12.3.2 Running osmtest 121
12.4 Partitions 122
12.4.1 File Format 122

12.5 Routing Algorithms 124
12.5.1 Effect of Topology Changes 125
12.5.2 Min Hop Algorithm 125
12.5.3 Purpose of UPDN Algorithm 125
12.5.3.1 UPDN Algorithm Usage 127
12.5.4 Fat-tree Routing Algorithm 127
12.5.5 LASH Routing Algorithm 128
12.5.6 DOR Routing Algorithm 129
12.5.7 Routing References 129
12.5.8 Modular Routine Engine 130
12.6 Quality of Service Management in OpenSM 131
12.6.1 Overview 131
12.6.2 Advanced QoS Policy File 131
12.6.3 Simple QoS Policy Definition 133
12.6.4 Policy File Syntax Guidelines 133
12.6.5 Examples of Advanced Policy File 133
12.6.6 Simple QoS Policy - Details and Examples 136
12.6.6.1 IPoIB 139
12.6.6.2 SDP 140
12.6.6.3 RDS 141
12.6.6.4 SRP 141
12.6.6.5 MPI 142
12.6.7 SL2VL Mapping and VL Arbitration 142
12.6.8 Deployment Example 143
12.7 QoS Configuration Examples 144
12.7.1 Typical HPC Example: MPI and Lustre 144
12.7.2 EDC SOA (2-tier): IPoIB and SRP 145
12.7.3 EDC (3-tier): IPoIB, RDS, SRP 146

Chapter 13 Adaptive Routing 147

13.1 Overview 147
13.2 Running OpenSM With AR Manager 147
13.2.1 AR Configuration File Example 147

Chapter 14 InfiniBand Fabric Diagnostic Utilities 149

14.1 Overview 149
14.2 Utilities Usage 149
14.2.1 Common Configuration, Interface and Addressing 149
14.2.2 IB Interface Definition 150
14.2.3 Addressing 150
14.3 ibdiagnet (of ibutils2) - IB Net Diagnostic 150
14.3.1 SYNOPSYS 151
14.3.2 Output Files 152
14.3.3 Return Codes 152
14.4 ibdiagnet (of ibutils) - IB Net Diagnostic 152
14.4.1 SYNOPSYS 152
14.4.2 Output Files 154
14.4.3 ERROR CODES 154
14.5 ibdiagpath - IB diagnostic path 155
14.5.1 SYNOPSYS 155
14.5.2 Output Files 156
14.5.3 ERROR CODES 156
14.6 ibv_devices 157
14.7 ibv_devinfo 157
14.8 ibstatus 159
14.9 ibportstate 161
14.10 ibroute 166
14.11 smpquery 170
14.12 perfquery 173

14.13 ibcheckerrs 177
14.14 mstflint 179
14.15 ibv_asyncwatch 183
14.16 ibdump 184

Appendix A Mellanox FlexBoot 187

A.1 Overview 187
A.2 Burning the Expansion ROM Image 189
A.3 Subnet Manager – OpenSM 194
A.4 TFTP Server 194
A.5 BIOS Configuration 194
A.6 Operation 194
A.7 Command Line Interface (CLI) 196
A.8 Diskless Machines 199
A.9 iSCSI Boot 204
A.10 WinPE 221

Appendix B ConnectX EN PXE 223

B.1 Overview 223
B.2 Burning the PXE ROM Image 224
B.3 Preparing the DHCP Server in Linux Environment 225
B.4 TFTP Server 227
B.5 BIOS Configuration 227
B.6 Operation 227
B.7 Command Line Interface (CLI) 228
B.8 Diskless Machines 230
B.9 iSCSI Boot 232
B.10 iSCSI Boot Example of SLES 10 SP2 OS 233
B.11 Windows 2008 iSCSI Boot 248
B.12 WinPE 249

Appendix C Performance Troubleshooting 251

C.1 PCI Express Performance Troubleshooting 251
C.2 InfiniBand Performance Troubleshooting 251
C.3 System Performance Troubleshooting 252

Appendix D ULP Performance Tuning 253

D.1 IPoIB Performance Tuning 253
D.2 Ethernet Performance Tuning 253
D.3 MPI Performance Tuning 254

Appendix E SRP Target Driver 255

E.1 Prerequisites and Installation 255
E.2 How-to run 255
E.3 How-to Unload/Shutdown 258

Appendix F mlx4 Module Parameters 259

F.1 mlx4_core Parameters 259
F.2 mlx4_ib Parameters 260
F.3 mlx4_en Parameters 260
F.4 mlx4_fc Parameters 260

Glossary 261

List of Tables

Table 1: Typographical Conventions 13
Table 2: Abbreviations and Acronyms 13
Table 3: Reference Documents 15
Table 4: `mlnxofedinstall` Return Codes 29
Table 5: Supported ConnectX Port Configurations 39
Table 6: Useful MPI Links 97
Table 7: ibdiagnet (of ibutils2) Output Files 152
Table 8: ibdiagnet (of ibutils) Output Files 154
Table 9: ibdiagpath Output Files 156
Table 10: ibv_devinfo Flags and Options 157
Table 11: ibstatus Flags and Options 159
Table 12: ibportstate Flags and Options 162
Table 13: ibportstate Flags and Options 166
Table 14: smpquery Flags and Options 170
Table 15: perfquery Flags and Options 174
Table 16: ibcheckerrs Flags and Options 177
Table 17: mstflint Switches 180
Table 18: mstflint Commands 181
Table 19: ibdump Options 184

Revision History

Rev 1.5 (March 29, 2010)

- Updated Figure 1,"Mellanox OFED Stack"
- Added support for ConnectX-2 devices
- Added support for RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) – see Chapter 5, "RoCE"
- Modified Section 7.3.1, "How to Know SDP Is Working"
- Added Section 7.7, "Using RDMA for Small Buffers"
- Added support for NFS over RDMA (NFSoRDMA) – Chapter 9, "NFSoRDMA"
- Added Section 10.6.2, "Important Note on RoCE Support," on page 103 in Chapter 10, "MPI"
- Modified Section 12.2.1, "opensm Syntax," on page 111
- Added Chapter 13, "Adaptive Routing"
- Added ibdiagnet of ibutils2 and ibdump to Chapter 14, "InfiniBand Fabric Diagnostic Utilities"
- Appendix B is now called Mellanox FlexBoot (instead of BoIB). FlexBoot supports *Virtual Protocol Interconnect*™ (VPI)
- Added Section C.3, "System Performance Troubleshooting"
- Added the parameter setting "VIADEV_RENDEZVOUS_THRESHOLD=8192" to Section D.3, "MPI Performance Tuning"

Rev 1.40.1 Changes from 1.40 (March 19, 2009)

- Correction to text in Section 4.3, "IPoIB Configuration," on page 51

Preface

This Preface provides general information concerning the scope and organization of this User's Manual. It includes the following sections:

- "Intended Audience" (page 12)
- "Documentation Conventions" (page 13)
- "Related Documentation" (page 15)
- "Support and Updates Webpage" (page 15)

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for system administrators responsible for the installation, configuration, management and maintenance of the software and hardware of VPI (InfiniBand, Ethernet, FCoE) adapter cards. It is also intended for application developers.

Documentation Conventions

Typographical Conventions

Table 1 - Typographical Conventions

Description	Convention	Example
File names	`file.extension`	
Directory names	`directory`	
Commands and their parameters	**`command param1`**	
Optional items	`[ ]`	
Mutually exclusive parameters	`{ p1 | p2 | p3 }`	
Optional mutually exclusive parameters	`[ p1 | p2 | p3 ]`	
Prompt of a *user* command under bash shell	`hostname$`	
Prompt of a *root* command under bash shell	`hostname#`	
Prompt of a *user* command under tcsh shell	`tcsh$`	
Environment variables	VARIABLE	
Code example	`if (a==b){};`	
Comment at the beginning of a code line	!, #	
Characters to be typed by users as-is	**bold font**	
Keywords	**bold font**	
Variables for which users supply specific values	*Italic font*	
Emphasized words	*Italic font*	*These are emphasized words*
Pop-up menu sequences	menu1 --> menu2 -->... --> item	
Note	**Note:**	
Warning	**Warning!**	

Common Abbreviations and Acronyms

Table 2 - Abbreviations and Acronyms (Sheet 1 of 2)

Abbreviation / Acronym	Whole Word / Description
B	(Capital) 'B' is used to indicate size in bytes or multiples of bytes (e.g., 1KB = 1024 bytes, and 1MB = 1048576 bytes)
b	(Small) 'b' is used to indicate size in bits or multiples of bits (e.g., 1Kb = 1024 bits)
FCoE	Fibre Channel over Ethernet

Table 2 - Abbreviations and Acronyms (Sheet 2 of 2)

Abbreviation / Acronym	Whole Word / Description
FW	Firmware
HCA	Host Channel Adapter
HW	Hardware
IB	InfiniBand
LSB	Least significant *byte*
lsb	Least significant *bit*
MSB	Most significant *byte*
msb	Most significant bit
NIC	Network Interface Card
SW	Software
VPI	Virtual Protocol Interconnect

Related Documentation

Table 3 - Reference Documents

Document Name	Description
InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Vol. 1, Release 1.2.1	The InfiniBand Architecture Specification that is provided by IBTA
IEEE Std 802.3ae™-2002 (Amendment to IEEE Std 802.3-2002) Document # PDF: SS94996	Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications Amendment: Media Access Control (MAC) Parameters, Physical Layers, and Management Parameters for 10 Gb/s Operation
Fibre Channel BackBone 5 standard (for Fibre Channel over Ethernet) Document # INCITS xxx-200x Fibre Channel Backbone	http://www.t11.org draft
Firmware Release Notes for Mellanox adapter devices	See the Release Notes PDF file relevant to your adapter device under `docs/` folder of installed package.
MFT User's Manual	Mellanox Firmware Tools User's Manual. See under `docs/` folder of installed package.
MFT Release Notes	Release Notes for the Mellanox Firmware Tools. See under `docs/` folder of installed package.

Support and Updates Webpage

Please visit http://www.mellanox.com > Products > IB/VPI SW/Drivers for downloads, FAQ, troubleshooting, future updates to this manual, etc.

1 Mellanox OFED Overview

1.1 Introduction to Mellanox OFED

Mellanox OFED is a single Virtual Protocol Internconnect (VPI) software stack based on the OpenFabrics (OFED) Linux stack, and operates across all Mellanox network adapter solutions supporting 10, 20 and 40Gb/s InfiniBand (IB); 10Gb/s Ethernet (10GigE); Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE); and 2.5 or 5.0 GT/s PCI Express 2.0 uplinks to servers.

All Mellanox network adapter cards are compatible with OpenFabrics-based RDMA protocols and software, and are supported with major operating system distributions.

1.2 Introduction to Mellanox VPI Adapters

Mellanox VPI adapters, which are based on Mellanox ConnectX® and ConnectX®-2 adapter devices, provide leading server and storage I/O performance with flexibility to support the myriad of communication protocols and network fabrics over a single device, without sacrificing functionality when consolidating I/O. For example, VPI-enabled adapters can support:

- Connectivity to 10, 20 and 40Gb/s InfiniBand switches, Ethernet switches, emerging Data Center Ethernet switches, InfiniBand to Ethernet and Fibre Channel Gateways, and Ethernet to Fibre Channel gateways
- Fibre Channel over Ethernet and Fibre Channel over InfiniBand
- A single firmware image for dual-port ConnectX/ConnectX-2 adapters that supports independent access to different convergence networks (InfiniBand, Ethernet or Data Center Ethernet) per port
- A unified application programming interface with access to communication protocols including: Networking (TCP, IP, UDP, sockets), Storage (NFS, CIFS, iSCSI, NFS-RDMA, SRP, Fibre Channel, Clustered Storage, and FCoE), Clustering (MPI, DAPL, RDS, sockets), and Management (SNMP, SMI-S)
- Communication protocol acceleration engines including: networking, storage, clustering, virtualization and RDMA with enhanced quality of service

1.3 Mellanox OFED Package

1.3.1 ISO Image

Mellanox OFED for Linux (MLNX_OFED_LINUX) is provided as ISO images, one per a supported Linux distribution, that includes *source code* and *binary* RPMs, firmware, utilities, and documentation. The ISO image contains an installation script (called `mlnxofedinstall`) that performs the necessary steps to accomplish the following:

- Discover the currently installed kernel
- Uninstall any InfiniBand stacks that are part of the standard operating system distribution or another vendor's commercial stack
- Install the MLNX_OFED_LINUX binary RPMs (if they are available for the current kernel)

- Identify the currently installed InfiniBand HCAs and perform the required firmware updates

1.3.2 Software Components

MLNX_OFED_LINUX contains the following software components:

- Network adapter drivers
  - mthca (IB only)
  - mlx4 (VPI), which is split into four modules: mlx4_core (low-level helper), mlx4_ib (IB), mlx4_en (Ethernet), and mlx4_fc (FCoE)
- Mid-layer core
  - Verbs, MADs, SA, CM, CMA, uVerbs, uMADs
- Upper Layer Protocols (ULPs)
  - IPoIB, RDS, SDP, SRP Initiator, NFSoRDMA (NFS over RDMA)
- MPI
  - Open MPI stack supporting the InfiniBand, RoCE and Ethernet interfaces
  - OSU MVAPICH stack supporting the InfiniBand and RoCE interfaces
  - MPI benchmark tests (OSU BW/LAT, Intel MPI Benchmark, Presta)
- OpenSM: InfiniBand Subnet Manager
- Utilities
  - Diagnostic tools
  - Performance tests
- Firmware tools (MFT)
- Source code for all the OFED software modules (for use under the conditions mentioned in the modules' LICENSE files)
- Documentation

1.3.3 Firmware

The ISO image includes the following firmware items:

- Firmware images (.mlx format) for all Mellanox standard network adapter devices
- Firmware configuration (.INI) files for Mellanox standard network adapter cards and custom cards
- FlexBoot for ConnectX®, ConnectX®-2, InfiniHost® III Ex in Mem-free mode, and InfiniHost® III Lx HCA devices
- ConnectX EN PXE (gPXE boot) for ConnectX® EN and ConnectX®-2 EN devices

1.3.4 Directory Structure

The ISO image of MLNX_OFED_LINUX contains the following files and directories:

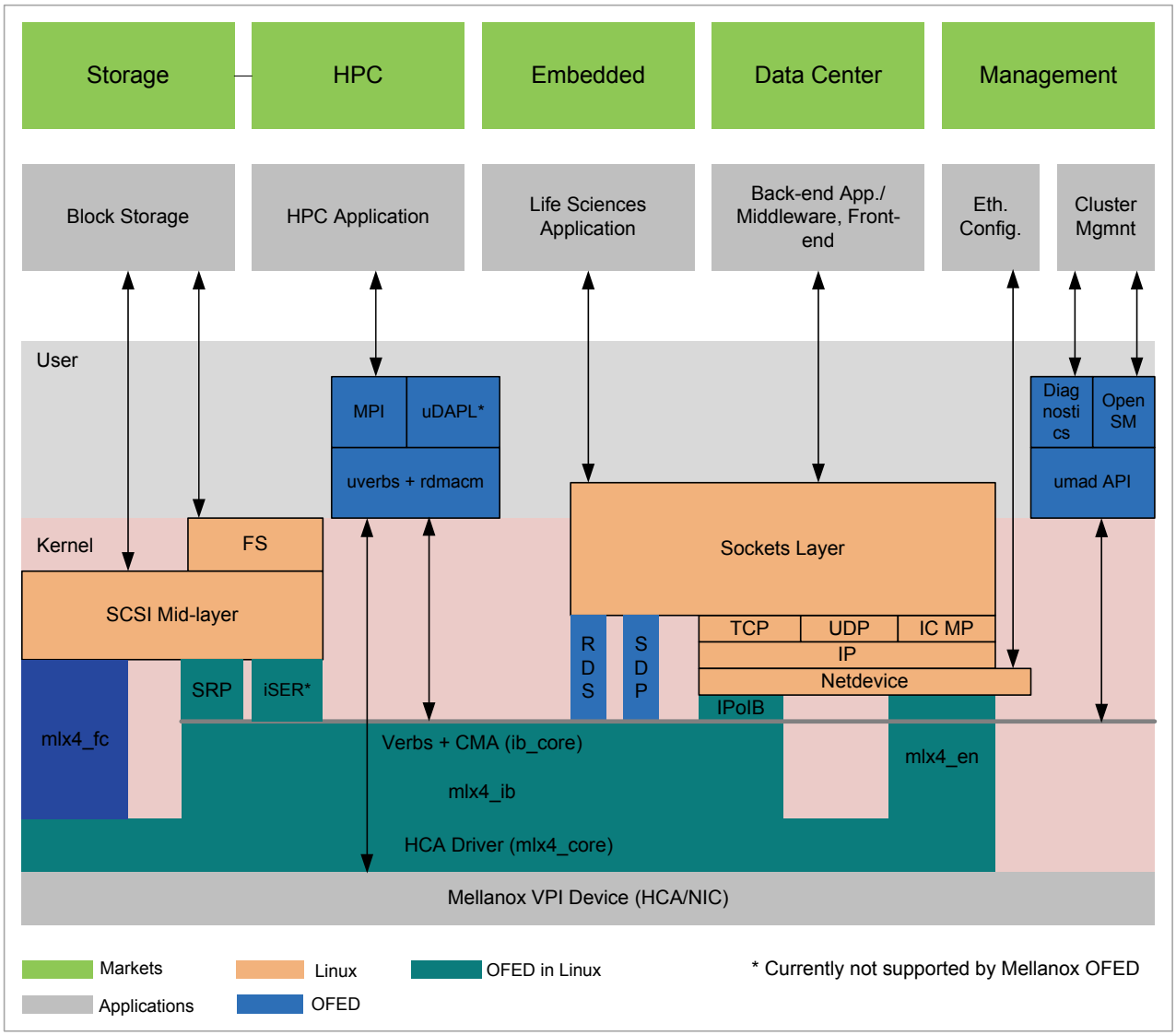
- mlnxofedinstallThis is the MLNX_OFED_LINUX installation script.
- uninstall.shThis is the MLNX_OFED_LINUX un-installation script.
- <CPU architecture folders>Directory of binary RPMs for a specific CPU architecture.

- firmware/Directory of the Mellanox IB HCA firmware images (including Boot-over-IB)
- src/Directory of the OFED source tarball and the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) tarball
- docs/Directory of Mellanox OFED related documentation

1.4 Architecture

Figure 1 shows a diagram of the Mellanox OFED stack, and how upper layer protocols (ULPs) interface with the hardware and with the kernel and user spaces. The application level also shows the versatility of markets that Mellanox OFED applies to.

Figure 1: Mellanox OFED Stack



The following sub-sections briefly describe the various components of the Mellanox OFED stack.

1.4.1 mthca HCA (IB) Driver

mthca is the low level driver implementation for the following Mellanox Technologies HCA (InfiniBand) devices: InfiniHost, InfiniHost III Ex and InfiniHost III Lx.

1.4.2 mlx4 VPI Driver

`mlx4` is the low level driver implementation for the ConnectX® and ConnectX®-2 adapters designed by Mellanox Technologies. ConnectX/ConnectX-2 can operate as an InfiniBand adapter, as an Ethernet NIC, or as a Fibre Channel HBA. The OFED driver supports InfiniBand and Ethernet NIC configurations. To accommodate the supported configurations, the driver is split into four modules:

mlx4_core

Handles low-level functions like device initialization and firmware commands processing. Also controls resource allocation so that the InfiniBand and Ethernet functions can share the device without interfering with each other.

mlx4_ib

Handles InfiniBand-specific functions and plugs into the InfiniBand midlayer

mlx4_en

A 10GigE driver under drivers/net/mlx4 that handles Ethernet specific functions and plugs into the netdev mid-layer

mlx4_fc

Handles the FCoE functions using ConnectX/ConnectX-2 Fibre Channel hardware offloads

1.4.3 Mid-layer Core

Core services include: management interface (MAD), connection manager (CM) interface, and Subnet Administrator (SA) interface. The stack includes components for both user-mode and kernel applications. The core services run in the kernel and expose an interface to user-mode for verbs, CM and management.

1.4.4 Open-FCoE

The FCoE feature is based on and interacts with the Open-FCoE project. Mellanox OFED includes the following open-fcoe.org modules: libfc and fcoe. See Section 3.4, “Fibre Channel over Ethernet”.

1.4.5 ULPs

IPoIB

The IP over IB (IPoIB) driver is a network interface implementation over InfiniBand. IPoIB encapsulates IP datagrams over an InfiniBand connected or datagram transport service. IPoIB prepends the IP datagrams with an encapsulation header, and sends the outcome over the Infini-

Band transport service. The transport service is Reliable Connected (RC) by default, but it may also be configured to be Unreliable Datagram (UD). The interface supports unicast, multicast and broadcast. For details, see Chapter 4, "IPoIB".

RoCE

RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) allows InfiniBand (IB) transport over Ethernet networks. It encapsulates IB transport and GRH headers in Ethernet packets bearing a dedicated ether type.

RDS

Reliable Datagram Sockets (RDS) is a socket API that provides reliable, in-order datagram delivery between sockets over RC or TCP/IP. For more details, see Chapter 6, "RDS".

SDP

Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP) is a byte-stream transport protocol that provides TCP stream semantics. SDP utilizes InfiniBand's advanced protocol offload capabilities. Because of this, SDP can have lower CPU and memory bandwidth utilization when compared to conventional implementations of TCP, while preserving the TCP APIs and semantics upon which most current network applications depend. For more details, see Chapter 7, "SDP".

SRP

SRP (SCSI RDMA Protocol) is designed to take full advantage of the protocol offload and RDMA features provided by the InfiniBand architecture. SRP allows a large body of SCSI software to be readily used on InfiniBand architecture. The SRP driver—known as the SRP Initiator—differs from traditional low-level SCSI drivers in Linux. The SRP Initiator does not control a local HBA; instead, it controls a connection to an IO controller—known as the SRP Target—to provide access to remote storage devices across an InfiniBand fabric. The SRP Target resides in an IO unit and provides storage services. See Chapter 8, "SRP" and Appendix E, "SRP Target Driver".

NFSoRDMA

NFS over RDMA in Mellanox OFED is a binding of NFS v2, v3, v4 on top of the InfiniBand RDMA transport and iWARP.

1.4.6 MPI

Message Passing Interface (MPI) is a library specification that enables the development of parallel software libraries to utilize parallel computers, clusters, and heterogeneous networks. Mellanox OFED includes the following MPI implementations over InfiniBand:

- Open MPI – an open source MPI-2 implementation by the Open MPI Project
- OSU MVAPICH – an MPI-1 implementation by Ohio State University

Mellanox OFED also includes MPI benchmark tests such as OSU BW/LAT, Intel MPI Benchmark, and Presta.

1.4.7 InfiniBand Subnet Manager

All InfiniBand-compliant ULPs require a proper operation of a Subnet Manager (SM) running on the InfiniBand fabric, at all times. An SM can run on any node or on an IB switch. OpenSM is an InfiniBand-compliant Subnet Manager, and it is installed as part of Mellanox OFED.[1] See Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager".

1.4.8 Diagnostic Utilities

Mellanox OFED includes the following two diagnostic packages for use by network and data-center managers:

- ibutils – Mellanox Technologies diagnostic utilities
- infiniband-diags – OpenFabrics Alliance InfiniBand diagnostic tools

1.4.9 Performance Utilities

A collection of tests written over uverbs intended for use as a performance micro-benchmark. As an example, the tests can be used for hardware or software tuning and/or functional testing. See `PERF_TEST_README.txt` under `docs/`.

1.4.10 Mellanox Firmware Tools

The Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package is a set of firmware management tools for a single InfiniBand node. MFT can be used for:

- Generating a standard or customized Mellanox firmware image
- Querying for firmware information
- Burning a firmware image to a single InfiniBand node

MFT includes the following tools:

`mlxburn`

This tool provides the following functions:

- Generation of a standard or customized Mellanox firmware image for burning (in binary or .mlx format)
- Burning an image to the Flash/EEPROM attached to a Mellanox HCA or switch device
- Querying the firmware version loaded on an HCA board
- Displaying the VPD (Vital Product Data) of an HCA board

`flint`

This tool burns a firmware binary image to the Flash(es) attached to an HCA board. It includes query functions to the burnt firmware image and to the binary image file.

`spark`

1. OpenSM is disabled by default. See Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager" for details on enabling it.

This tool burns a firmware binary image to the EEPROM(s) attached to a switch device. It includes query functions to the burnt firmware image and to the binary image file. The tool accesses the EEPROM and/or switch device via an I2C-compatible interface.

ibspark

This tool burns a firmware binary image to the EEPROM(s) attached to a switch device. It includes query functions to the burnt firmware image and to the binary image file. The tool accesses the switch device and the EEPROM via vendor-specific MADs over the InfiniBand fabric (In-Band tool).

Debug utilities

A set of debug utilities (e.g., itrace, mstdump, isw, and i2c)

For additional details, please refer to the MFT User's Manual `docs/`.

1.5 Quality of Service

Quality of Service (QoS) requirements stem from the realization of I/O consolidation over an IB network. As multiple applications and ULPs share the same fabric, a means is needed to control their use of network resources.

QoS over Mellanox OFED for Linux is discussed in Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager".

2 Installation

This chapter describes how to install and test the Mellanox OFED for Linux package on a single host machine with Mellanox InfiniBand and/or Ethernet adapter hardware installed. The chapter includes the following sections:

- "Hardware and Software Requirements" (page 25)
- "Downloading Mellanox OFED" (page 26)
- "Installing Mellanox OFED" (page 26)
- "Uninstalling Mellanox OFED" (page 38)

2.1 Hardware and Software Requirements

2.1.1 Hardware Requirements

Platforms

- A server platform with an adapter card based on one of the following Mellanox Technologies' InfiniBand HCA devices:
  - MT25408 ConnectX®-2 (VPI, IB, EN, FCoE) (firmware: fw-ConnectX2)
  - MT25408 ConnectX® (VPI, IB, EN, FCoE) (firmware: fw-25408)
  - MT25208 InfiniHost® III Ex (firmware: fw-25218 for Mem-Free cards, and fw-25208 for cards with memory)
  - MT25204 InfiniHost® III Lx (firmware: fw-25204)
  - MT23108 InfiniHost® (firmware: fw-23108)

Note: For the list of supported architecture platforms, please refer to the *Mellanox OFED Release Notes* file.

Required Disk Space for Installation

- 400 MB

2.1.2 Software Requirements

Operating System

- Linux operating system

Note: For the list of supported operating system distributions and kernels, please refer to the *Mellanox OFED Release Notes* file.

Installer Privileges

- The installation requires administrator privileges on the target machine

2.2 Downloading Mellanox OFED

Step 1. Verify that the system has a Mellanox network adapter (HCA/NIC) installed by ensuring that you can see ConnectX or InfiniHost entries in the display.

The following example shows a system with an installed Mellanox HCA:

```
host1# lspci -v | grep Mellanox
02:00.0 InfiniBand: Mellanox Technologies MT25418 [ConnectX IB DDR, PCIe 2.0 2.5GT/s] (rev
a0)
```

Step 2. Download the ISO image to your host.

The image's name has the format MLNX_OFED_LINUX-<ver>-<OS label>.iso. You can download it from http://www.mellanox.com > Products > IB SW/Drivers.

Step 3. Use the md5sum utility to confirm the file integrity of your ISO image. Run the following command and compare the result to the value provided on the download page.

```
host1$ md5sum MLNX_OFED_LINUX-<ver>-<OS label>.iso
```

2.3 Installing Mellanox OFED

The installation script, `mlnxofedinstall`, performs the following:

- Discovers the currently installed kernel
- Uninstalls any software stacks that are part of the standard operating system distribution or another vendor's commercial stack
- Installs the MLNX_OFED_LINUX binary RPMs (if they are available for the current kernel)
- Identifies the currently installed InfiniBand and Ethernet network adapters and automatically[1] upgrades the firmware

2.3.1 Pre-installation Notes

- The installation script removes all previously installed Mellanox OFED packages and re-installs from scratch. You will be prompted to acknowledge the deletion of the old packages.

  Note: Pre-existing configuration files will be saved with the extension ".conf.saverpm".

- If you need to install Mellanox OFED on an entire (homogeneous) cluster, a common strategy is to mount the ISO image on one of the cluster nodes and then copy it to a shared file system such as NFS. To install on all the cluster nodes, use cluster-aware tools (such as pdsh).
- If your kernel version does not match with any of the offered pre-built RPMs, you can add your kernel version by using the "`mlnx_add_kernel_support.sh`" script located under the docs/ directory.

  Usage:

  ```
  mlnx_add_kernel_support.sh -i|--iso <mlnx iso>
         [-t|--tmpdir <local work dir>][-v|--verbose]
  ```

1. The firmware will not be updated if you run the install script with the '--without-fw-update' option.

Example

The following command will create a MLNX_OFED_LINUX ISO image for RedHat 5.4 under the
/tmp directory.

```
MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1-rhel5.4/docs/mlnx_add_kernel_support.sh -i
/mnt/MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1-rhel5.4.iso
All Mellanox, OEM, OFED, or Distribution IB packages will be removed.
Do you want to continue?[y/N]:y
Removing OFED RPMs...
Running mkisofs...
Created /tmp/MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1-rhel5.4.iso
```

2.3.2 Installation Script

Mellanox OFED includes an installation script called `mlnxofedinstall`. Its usage is described below. You will use it during the installation procedure described in Section 2.3.3, "Installation Procedure," on page 30.

Usage

```
./mlnxofedinstall [OPTIONS]
```

Note: If no options are provided to the script, then all available RPMs are installed.

Options

```
-c|--config <packages config_file>
                    Example of the configuration file can be found under docs
-n|--net <network config file>
                    Example of the network configuration file can be found
                    under docs
-p|--print-available Print available packages for the current platform and cre-
                    ate a corresponding ofed.conf file. The installation script
                    exits after creating ofed.conf.
--with-fc           Install FCoE support — Available on RHEL5.2 ONLY
--with-32bit        Install 32-bit libraries (default). This is relevant for
                    x86_64 and ppc64 platforms.
--without-32bit     Skip 32-bit libraries installation
--without-ib-bonding Skip ib-bonding RPM installation
--without-depcheck  Skip Distro's libraries check
--without-fw-update Skip firmware update
--force-fw-update   Force firmware update
--force             Force installation (without querying the user)
--all               Install all kernel modules, libibverbs, libibumad, librd-
                    macm, mft, mstflint, diagnostic tools, OpenSM, ib-bonding,
                    MVAPICH, Open MPI, MPI tests, MPI selector, perftest, sdp-
                    netstat and libsdp srptools, rds-tools, static and dynamic
                    libraries
```

--hpc	Install all kernel modules, libibverbs, libibumad, librdmacm, mft, mstflint, diagnostic tools, OpenSM, ib-bonding, MVAPICH, Open MPI, MPI tests, MPI selector, dynamic libraries
--basic	Install all kernel modules, libibverbs, libibumad, mft, mstflint, dynamic libraries
--msm	Install all kernel modules, libibverbs, libibumad, mft, mstflint, diagnostic tools, OpenSM, ib-bonding, dynamic libraries NOTE: With --msm flag, the OpenSM daemon is configured to run upon boot.
-v|-vv|-vvv	Set verbosity level
-q	Set quiet - no messages will be printed

2.3.2.1 mlnxofedinstall Return Codes

Table 4 lists the `mlnxofedinstall` script return codes and their meanings.

Table 4 - `mlnxofedinstall` ***Return Codes***

Return Code	Meaning
0	The Installation ended successfully
1	The installation failed
2	No firmware was found for the adapter device
3	Failed to start the `mst` driver

2.3.3 Installation Procedure

Step 1. Login to the installation machine as root.

Step 2. Mount the ISO image on your machine

```
host1# mount -o ro,loop MLNX_OFED_LINUX-<ver>-<OS label>.iso /mnt
```

Note: After mounting the ISO image, `/mnt` will be a Read Only folder.

Step 3. Run the installation script

```
host1# /mnt/mlnxofedinstall
```

```
This program will install the MLNX_OFED_LINUX package on your machine.
Note that all other Mellanox, OEM, OFED, or Distribution IB packages will be removed.
Do you want to continue?[y/N]:y

Uninstalling the previous version of OFED

Starting MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1-rc6 installation ...

Installing kernel-ib RPM
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:kernel-ib              ########################################### [100%]
Installing kernel-ib-devel RPM
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:kernel-ib-devel        ########################################### [100%]
Installing mft RPM
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mft                    ########################################### [100%]
Installing mpi-selector RPM
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpi-selector           ########################################### [100%]
Install user level RPMs:
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad              ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad              ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad-devel        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad-devel        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad-devel         ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad-devel         ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
```

```
   1:ofed-scripts           ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs-devel       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs-devel       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs-devel-static################################################ [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs-devel-static################################################ [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibverbs-utils       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmthca               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmthca               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmthca-devel-static  ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmthca-devel-static  ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmlx4                ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmlx4                ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmlx4-devel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libmlx4-devel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibcm                ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibcm                ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibcm-devel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibcm-devel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad-static       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibumad-static       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad-static        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libibmad-static        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:ibsim                  ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
```

```
   1:librdmacm              ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:librdmacm              ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:librdmacm-utils        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:librdmacm-devel        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:librdmacm-devel        ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libsdp                 ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libsdp                 ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libsdp-devel           ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:libsdp-devel           ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-libs            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-libs            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm                 ########################################### [100%]
opensmd                    0:off  1:off  2:off  3:off  4:off  5:off  6:off
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-devel           ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-devel           ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-static          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:opensm-static          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:compat-dapl            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:compat-dapl            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:compat-dapl-devel      ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:compat-dapl-devel      ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl                   ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl                   ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl-devel             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl-devel             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl-devel-static      ########################################### [100%]
```

```
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl-devel-static      ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:dapl-utils             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:perftest               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mstflint               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:sdpnetstat             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:srptools               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:rds-tools              ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:rnfs-utils             ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:ibutils                ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:ibutils2               ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:ibdump                 ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:infiniband-diags       ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:qperf                  ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mlnxofed-docs          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mvapich_gcc            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mvapich_pgi            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mvapich_intel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:openmpi_gcc            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:openmpi_pgi            ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:openmpi_intel          ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_mvapich_gcc   ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_mvapich_pgi   ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_mvapich_intel ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_openmpi_gcc   ########################################### [100%]
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_openmpi_pgi   ########################################### [100%]
```

```
Preparing...                ########################################### [100%]
   1:mpitests_openmpi_intel ########################################### [100%]
Device (15b3:634a):
       02:00.0 InfiniBand: Mellanox Technologies MT25418 [ConnectX IB DDR, PCIe 2.0 2.5GT/
s] (rev a0)
        Link Width: 8x
        Link Speed: 2.5Gb/s


Installation finished successfully.

Programming HCA firmware for /dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0 device
Running: mlxburn -d /dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0 -fw /tmp/MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1/
MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1-sles11/firmware/fw-25408/2_7_000/fw-25408-rel.mlx -dev_type 25408 -
no
-I- Querying device ...
-I- Using auto detected configuration file: /tmp/MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1/MLNX_OFED_LINUX-
1.5.1-sles11/firmware/fw-25408/2_7_000/MHGH28-XTC_A4-A7.ini (PSID = MT_04A0140005)
-I- Generating image ...

    Current FW version on flash:  2.6.0
    New FW version:               2.7.0

Burning FW image without signatures  - OK
Restoring signature                  - OK
-I- Image burn completed successfully.
Please reboot your system for the changes to take effect.
warning: /etc/infiniband/openib.conf saved as /etc/infiniband/openib.conf.rpmsave
```

Note: In case your machine has the latest firmware, no firmware update will occur and the installation script will print at the end of installation a message similar to the following:

```
...
Installation finished successfully.

The firmware version 2.7.000 is up to date.
Note: To force firmware update use '--force-fw-update' flag.
```

Note: In case your machine has an unsupported network adapter device, no firmware update will occur and the error message below will be printed. Please contact your hardware vendor for help on firmware updates.

Error message:

```
-I- Querying device ...
-E- Can't auto detect fw configuration file: ...
```

Step 4. In case the installation script performed firmware updates to your network adapter hardware, it will ask you to reboot your machine.

Step 5. The script adds the following lines to `/etc/security/limits.conf` for the userspace components such as MPI:

```
* soft memlock unlimited
* hard memlock unlimited
```

These settings unlimit the amount of memory that can be pinned by a user space application.

If desired, tune the value unlimited to a specific amount of RAM.

Step 6. For your machine to be part of the InfiniBand/VPI fabric, a Subnet Manager must be running on one of the fabric nodes. At this point, Mellanox OFED for Linux has already installed the OpenSM Subnet Manager on your machine. For details on starting OpenSM, see Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager".

Step 7. (InfiniBand only) Run the `hca_self_test.ofed` utility to verify whether or not the InfiniBand link is up. The utility also checks for and displays additional information such as

- HCA firmware version
- Kernel architecture
- Driver version
- Number of active HCA ports along with their states
- Node GUID

Note: For more details on `hca_self_test.ofed`, see the file `hca_self_test.readme` under `docs/`.

```
host1# /usr/bin/hca_self_test.ofed

---- Performing InfiniBand HCA Self Test ----
Number of HCAs Detected ................ 1
PCI Device Check ....................... PASS
Kernel Arch ............................ x86_64
Host Driver Version .................... MLNX_OFED_LINUX-1.5.1 (OFED-1.5.1-mlnx9) 1.5.1-
2.6.9_89.ELlargesmp
Host Driver RPM Check .................. PASS
HCA Firmware on HCA #0 ................. 2.7.000
HCA Firmware Check on HCA #0 ........... PASS
Host Driver Initialization ............. PASS
Number of HCA Ports Active ............. 0
Port State of Port #0 on HCA #0 ........ INIT
Port State of Port #0 on HCA #0 ........ DOWN
Error Counter Check on HCA #0 .......... PASS
Kernel Syslog Check .................... PASS
Node GUID on HCA #0 .................... 00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:e0
------------------ DONE --------------------
```

Note: After the installer completes, information about the Mellanox OFED installation such as prefix, kernel version, and installation parameters can be retrieved by running the command `/etc/infiniband/info`.

2.3.4 Installation Results

Software

- The OFED and MFT packages are installed under the /usr directory.
- The kernel modules are installed under:
  - InfiniBand subsystem:

    ```
    /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers/infiniband/
    ```

  - mlx4 driver:

    ```
    Under /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers/net/mlx4
     you will find mlx4_core.ko,  mlx4_en.ko,  mlx4_ib.ko (and mlx4_fc if
     you ran the installation script with --with-fc)
    ```

  - RDS:

    ```
    /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/net/rds/rds.ko
    ```

  - Bonding module:

    ```
    /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers/net/bonding/bonding.ko
    ```

- The package kernel-ib-devel include files are placed under `/usr/src/ofa_kernel/include/`. These include files should be used when building kernel modules that use the stack. (Note that the include files, if needed, are “backported” to your kernel.)
- The raw package (un-backported) source files are placed under `/usr/src/ofa_kernel-<ver>`
- The script `openibd` is installed under `/etc/init.d/`. This script can be used to load and unload the software stack.
- The script `connectx_port_config` is installed under `/sbin`. This script can be used to configure the ports of ConnectX network adapter cards to Ethernet and/or InfiniBand. For details on this script, please see Section 3.1, “Port Type Management”.
- The directory `/etc/infiniband` is created with the files `info` and `openib.conf and connectx.conf`. The `info` script can be used to retrieve Mellanox OFED installation information. The `openib.conf` file contains the list of modules that are loaded when the `openibd` script is used. The `connectx.conf` file saves the ConnectX adapter card’s ports configuration to Ethernet and/or InfiniBand. This file is used at driver start/restart (`/etc/init.d/openibd start`) .
- The file `90-ib.rules` is installed under `/etc/udev/rules.d/`
- If OpenSM is installed, the daemon `opensmd` is installed under `/etc/init.d/` and `opensm.conf` is installed under `/etc`.
- If IPoIB configuration files are included, `ifcfg-ib<n>` files will be installed under:
  - `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/` on a RedHat machine
  - `/etc/sysconfig/network/` on a SuSE machine
- The installation process unlimits the amount of memory that can be pinned by a user space application. See Step 5.
- Man pages will be installed under `/usr/share/man/`

Firmware

- The firmware of existing network adapter devices will be updated if the following two conditions are fullfilled:

  1. You run the installation script in default mode; that is, *without* the option '--without-fw-update'.
  2. The firmware version of the adapter device is older than the firmware version included with the Mellanox OFED ISO image

  Note: If an adapter's Flash was originially programmed with an Expansion ROM image, the automatic firmware update will also burn an Expansion ROM image.

- In case your machine has an unsupported network adapter device, no firmware update will occur and the error message below will be printed. Please contact your hardware vendor for help on firmware updates.

  Error message:

```
-I- Querying device ...
-E- Can't auto detect fw configuration file: ...
```

2.3.5 Post-installation Notes

- Most of the Mellanox OFED components can be configured or reconfigured after the installation by modifying the relevant configuration files. See the relevant chapters in this manual for details.
- The list of the modules that will be loaded automatically upon boot can be found in the `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` file.

2.4 Updating Firmware After Installation

In case you ran the `mlnxofedinstall` script with the '`--without-fw-update`' option and now you wish to (manually) update firmware on you adapter card(s), you need to perform the following steps:

Note: If you need to burn an Expansion ROM image, please refer to "Burning the Expansion ROM Image" on page 189.

Note: The following steps are also appropriate in case you wish to burn newer firmware that you have downloaded from Mellanox Technologies' Web site (http://www.mellanox.com > Downloads > Firmware).

Step 1. Start `mst`.

```
host1# mst start
```

Step 2. Identify your target InfiniBand device for firmware update.

a. Get the list of InfiniBand device names on your machine.

```
host1# mst status
```

```
MST modules:
------------
    MST PCI module loaded
    MST PCI configuration module loaded
    MST Calibre (I2C) module is not loaded

MST devices:
------------
/dev/mst/mt25418_pciconf0        - PCI configuration cycles access.
                                   bus:dev.fn=02:00.0 addr.reg=88 data.reg=92
                                   Chip revision is: A0
/dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0         - PCI direct access.
                                   bus:dev.fn=02:00.0 bar=0xdef00000 size=0x100000
                                   Chip revision is: A0
/dev/mst/mt25418_pci_msix0       - PCI direct access.
                                   bus:dev.fn=02:00.0 bar=0xdeefe000 size=0x2000
/dev/mst/mt25418_pci_uar0        - PCI direct access.
                                   bus:dev.fn=02:00.0 bar=0xdc800000 size=0x800000
```

b. Your InfiniBand device is the one with the postfix "_pci_cr0". In the example listed above, this will be `/dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0`.

Step 3. Burn firmware.

a. Burning a firmware binary image using **`mstflint`** (that is already installed on your machine).

Please refer to `MSTFLINT_README.txt` under `docs/`.

b. Burning a firmware image from a .mlx file using the **`mlxburn`** utility (that is already installed on your machine).

The following command burns firmware onto the ConnectX device with the device name obtained in the example of Step 2.

```
host1$ mlxburn -dev /dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0 \
-fw /mnt/firmware/fw-25408/fw-25408-rel.mlx
```

Warning! Make sure that you have the correct *device name*, *firmware path*, and *firmware file name* before running this command. For help, please refer to the *Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) User's Manual* under `/mnt/docs/`.

Step 3. Reboot your machine after the firmware burning is completed.

2.5 Uninstalling Mellanox OFED

Use the script `/usr/sbin/ofed_uninstall.sh` to uninstall the Mellanox OFED package. The script is part of the `ofed-scripts` RPM.

3 Working With VPI

VPI allows ConnectX ports to be independently configured as either IB or Eth. If a ConnectX port is configured as Eth, it may also function as a Fibre Channel HBA.

3.1 Port Type Management

ConnectX ports can be individually configured to work as InfiniBand or Ethernet or Fibre Channel over Ethernet ports. By default both ConnectX ports are initialized as InfiniBand ports. If you wish to change the port type use the `connectx_port_config` script after the driver is loaded.

Running "`/sbin/connectx_port_config -s`" will show current port configuration for all ConnectX devices.

Port configuration is saved in the file: `/etc/infiniband/connectx.conf`. This saved configuration is restored at driver restart only if restarting via "`/etc/init.d/openibd restart`".

Possible port types are:

- eth – Ethernet
- ib – Infiniband

Table 5 lists the ConnectX port configurations supported by VPI.

Table 5 - Supported ConnectX Port Configurations

Port 1 Configuration	Port 2 Configuration
ib	ib
ib	eth
eth	eth

Note that the configuration *Port1 = eth* and *Port2 = ib* is ***not*** supported.

Also note that FCoE can run only on a port configured as "eth" and the `mlx4_en` driver must be loaded.

The port link type can be configured for each device in the system at run time using the "`/sbin/connectx_port_config`" script. This utility will prompt for the PCI device to be modified (if there is only one it will be selected automatically).

In the next stage the user will be prompted for the desired mode for each port. The desired port configuration will then be set for the selected device.

Note: This utility also has a non-interactive mode:

```
/sbin/connectx_port_config [[-d|--device <PCI device ID>] -c|--conf <port1,port2>]"
```

3.2 InfiniBand Driver

The InfiniBand driver, `mlx4_ib`, handles InfiniBand-specific functions and plugs into the InfiniBand mid-layer.

3.3 Ethernet Driver

3.3.1 Overview

The Ethernet driver, `mlx4_en`, exposes the following ConnectX/ConnectX-2 capabilities:

- Single/Dual port
- Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE)
- Up to 16 Rx queues per port
- 5 Tx queues per port
- Rx steering mode: Receive Core Affinity (RCA)
- Tx arbitration mode: VLAN user-priority (off by default)
- MSI-X or INTx
- Adaptive interrupt moderation
- HW Tx/Rx checksum calculation
- Large Send Offload (i.e., TCP Segmentation Offload)
- Large Receive Offload
- IP Reassembly Offload
- Multi-core NAPI support
- VLAN Tx/Rx acceleration (HW VLAN stripping/insertion)
- HW VLAN filtering
- HW multicast filtering
- ifconfig up/down + mtu changes (up to 10K)
- Ethtool support
- Net device statistics
- CX4, QSFP and SFP+ connectors

3.3.2 Loading the Ethernet Driver

By default, the Mellanox OFED stack loads `mlx4_en`. Run 'ifconfig -a' to verify that the module is listed.

3.3.3 Unloading the Driver

If `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf had` MLX4_EN_LOAD=yes at driver start-up, then you can unload the `mlx4_en` driver by running: `/etc/init.d/openibd stop`

Otherwise, unload `mlx4_en` by running:

#> modprobe -r mlx4_en

3.3.4 Ethernet Driver Usage and Configuration

- To assign an IP address to the interface run:

```
#> ifconfig eth<n> <ip>
```

  where 'x' is the OS assigned interface number.

- To check driver and device information run:

```
#> ethtool -i eth<n>
```

  Example:

```
#> ethtool -i eth2
 driver: mlx4_en (MT_04A0140005)
 version: 1.5.1 (March 2010)
 firmware-version: 2.7.000
 bus-info: 0000:13:00.0
```

- To query stateless offload status run:

```
#> ethtool -k eth<x>
```

- To set stateless offload status run:

```
#> ethtool -K eth<x> [rx on|off] [tx on|off] [sg on|off] [tso on|off]
```

- To query interrupt coalescing settings run:

```
#> ethtool -c eth<x>
```

- By default, the driver uses adaptive interrupt moderation for the receive path, which adjusts the moderation time to the traffic pattern. To enable/disable adaptive interrupt moderation use the following command:

```
#>ethtool -C eth<x> adaptive-rx on|off
```

- Above an upper limit of packet rate, adaptive moderation will set the moderation time to its highest value. Below a lower limit of packet rate, the moderation time will be set to its lowest value. To set the values for packet rate limits and for moderation time high and low values, use the following command:

```
#> ethtool -C eth<x> [pkt-rate-low N] [pkt-rate-high N] [rx-usecs-low N]
[rx-usecs-high N]
```

- To set interrupt coalescing settings when adaptive moderation is disabled, use:

```
#> ethtool -c eth<x> [rx-usecs N] [rx-frames N]
```

Note: Note: usec settings correspond to the time to wait after the *last* packet is sent/received before triggering an interrupt.

- To query pause frame settings run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -a eth<x>
  ```
- To set pause frame settings run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -A eth<x> [rx on|off] [tx on|off]
  ```
- To query ring size values run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -g eth<x>
  ```
- To modify rings size run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -G eth<x> [rx <N>] [tx <N>]
  ```
- To obtain additional device statistics, run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -S eth<x>
  ```
- To perform a self diagnostics test, run:
  ```
  #> ethtool -t eth<x>
  ```
- The mlx4_en parameters can be found under `/sys/module/mlx4_en` (or `/sys/module/mlx4_en/parameters`, depending on the OS) and can be listed using the command:
  ```
  #> modinfo mlx4_en
  ```
  To set non-default values to module parameters, the following line should be added to the file `/etc/modprobe.conf`:
  ```
  "options mlx4_en <param_name>=<value> <param_name>=<value> ..."
  ```

3.4 Fibre Channel over Ethernet

3.4.1 Overview

The FCoE feature provided by Mellanox OFED allows connecting to Fibre Channel (FC) targets on an FC fabric using an FCoE-capable switch or gateway. Key features include:

- T11 and pre-T11 frame format
- Complete hardware offload of SCSI operations in pre-T11 format
- Hardware offload of FC-CRC calculations in pre-T11 format
- Zero copy FC stack in pre-T11 format
- VLANs and PFC (Priority-flow-control, that is PPP)

The FCoE feature is based on and interacts with the Open-FCoE project. The `mlx4_fc` module is designed to replace the original `fcoe` module and to allow using ConnectX hardware offloads.

Mellanox OFED also includes the following open-fcoe.org modules:

- libfc

  Used by the `mlx4_fc` module to handle FC logic such as fabric login and logout, remote port login and logout, fc-ns transactions, etc

- fcoe

  Implements FCoE fully in software. Will load instead of mlx4_fc to support T11 frame format. Works on top of standard Ethernet NICs, including `mlx4_en`.

See `http://www.open-fcoe.org` for further information on the Open-FCoE project.

3.4.2 Installation

To install the FCoE feature, you should run the `mlnxofedinstall` script (described in Section 2.3) with the --with-fc option.

3.4.3 FCoE Basic Usage

After loading the driver, userspace operations should create/destroy vHBAs on required Ethernet interfaces. This can be done manually by issuing commands to the driver using simple sysfs operations. Alternatively, it can be handled automatically by the `dcbxd` daemon if the interface is connected to an FCoE switch supporting DCBX negotiation of the FCoE feature (e.g., Cisco Nexus).

Once a vHBA is instantiated on an Ethernet interface, it immediately attempts to log into the FC fabric. Provided that the FC fabric and FC targets are well configured, LUNs will map to SCSI disk devices (/dev/sdXXX).

vHBAs instantiated automatically by the dcbxd daemon are created on a VLAN 0 interface with VLAN priority set to the value negotiated with the switch.

This takes advantage of PFC, which allows pausing FCoE traffic when needed without pausing the entire Ethernet link. Also, with proper configuration of the FCoE switch, the link's maximum bandwidth can be divided as needed between FCoE and regular Ethernet traffic.

Instantiating vHBAs manually allows creating them on VLAN interfaces with any arbitrary VLAN id and priority, as well as on the regular, without VLAN, Ethernet interfaces. Using the regular interface means that PFC cannot be used.

In this case, it is highly recommended that both the FCoE switch and the `mlx4_en` driver be configured to use link pause (regular flow-control). Otherwise, any FCoE packet drop will trigger SCSI errors and timeouts.

3.4.3.1 FCoE Configuration

After installation, please edit the file `/etc/mlxfc/mlxfc.conf` and set the following variables:

- FC_SPEC – set to "T11" or "pre-T11" as supported by your FCoE switch.

  Note: Only pre-T11 format is offloaded in hardware.

- DCBX_IFS – provide a space separated list of Ethernet devices to monitor the use of the DCBX protocol for the FCoE feature availability. vHBAs are automatically created on these interfaces if the FCoE switch is configured for automatic FCoE negotiation.
- MTU – if MTU of the Ethernet device is changed from the default (1500), put the correct value here.

Configure the mlx4_en Ethernet driver to support PFC. Add the following line to the file `/etc/modprobe.conf`, and restart the network driver

```
options mlx4_en pfctx=0xff pfcrx=0xff
```

3.4.3.2 Starting FCoE Service

Make sure the network is up (modprobe mlx4_en). Then, run

```
#> /etc/init.d/mlxfc start
```

vHBAs will be instantiated on DCBX monitored interfaces, and SCSI LUNs will get mapped.

For Manual instantiation of vHBAs, please see Section 3.4.4.1, "Manual vHBA Control".

3.4.3.3 Stopping FCoE Service

Run:

```
#> /etc/init.d/mlxfc stop
```

Note: Only when the mlxfc service is stopped and the mlx4_en module is removed can the mlx4_core module be removed as well.

3.4.4 FCoE Advanced Usage

Advanced usage will probably be needed when connected to FCoE switches that do not support the Cisco-like FCoE DCBX auto-negotiation.

3.4.4.1 Manual vHBA Control

Manual control allows creating and destroying vHBAs, and signaling link-up and link-down to existing vHBAs. This is done using sysfs operations.

When using the pre-T11 stack, the sysfs directory is located at `/sys/class/mlx4_fc`.

When using the T11 stack, the sysfs directory is located at `/sys/module/fcoe`.

Both directories contain the same entries.

In the following, the sysfs directory will be referred to as $FCSYSFS.

To create a new vHBA on an Ethernet interface (e.g., eth3), run:

```
#> echo "eth3" > $FCSYSFS/create
```

To destroy a previously created vHBA on an interface (e.g., eth3), run:

```
#> echo "eth3" > $FCSYSFS/destroy
```

To signal "link-up" to an existing vHBA (e.g., on eth3), run:

```
#> echo "eth3" > $FCSYSFS/link_up
```

To signal "link-down" to an existing vHBA (e.g., on eth3), run:

```
#> echo "eth3" > $FCSYSFS/link_down
```

3.4.4.2 Creating vHBAs That Use PFC

To create a vHBA that uses the PFC feature, it is required to configure the Ethernet driver to support PFC, create a VLAN Ethernet interface, assign it a priority, and start a vHBA on the interface.

The following steps demonstrate the creation of such a vHBA.

To configure the mlx4_en Ethernet driver to support PFC, add the following line to the file `/etc/modprobe.conf` and restart the network driver.

```
options mlx4_en pfctx=0xff pfcrx=0xff
```

To create a VLAN with an ID (e.g., 55) on interface (e.g., eth3), run:

```
#> vconfig add eth3 55
#> ifconfig eth3.55 up
```

To set the map of skb priority 0 to the requested vlan priority (e.g., 6), run:

```
#> vconfig set_egress_map eth3.55 0 6
```

To create the vHBA, enter:

```
#> echo "eth3.55" > $FCSYSFS/create
```

3.4.4.3 Creating vHBAs That Use Link Pause

The `mlx4_en` Ethernet driver supports link pause by default. To change this setting, you can use the following command:

```
#> ethtool -A  eth<x> [rx on|off] [tx on|off]
```

To create a vHBA, run:

```
#> echo "eth3.55" > $FCSYSFS/create
```

4 IPoIB

4.1 Introduction

The IP over IB (IPoIB) driver is a network interface implementation over InfiniBand. IPoIB encapsulates IP datagrams over an InfiniBand Connected or Datagram transport service. This chapter describes the following:

- IPoIB mode setting (Section 4.2)
- IPoIB configuration (Section 4.3)
- How to create and remove subinterfaces (Section 4.4)
- How to verify IPoIB functionality (Section 4.5)
- The ib-bonding driver (Section 4.6)
- IPoIB performance tuning (Section 4.7)
- How to test IPoIB performance (Section 4.8)

4.2 IPoIB Mode Setting

IPoIB can run in two modes of operation: Connected mode and Datagram mode. By default, IPoIB is set to work in Connected mode. This can be changed to become Datagram mode by editing the file `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` and setting 'SET_IPOIB_CM=no'.

After changing the mode, you need to restart the driver by running:

```
/etc/init.d/openibd restart
```

To check the current mode used for out-going connections, enter:

```
cat /sys/class/net/ib<n>/mode
```

4.3 IPoIB Configuration

Unless you have run the installation script `mlnxofedinstall` with the flag '-n', then IPoIB has not been configured by the installation. The configuration of IPoIB requires assigning an IP address and a subnet mask to each HCA port, like any other network adapter card (i.e., you need to prepare a file called ifcfg-ib<n> for each port). The first port on the first HCA in the host is called interface ib0, the second port is called ib1, and so on.

An IPoIB configuration can be based on DHCP (Section 4.3.1) or on a static configuration (Section 4.3.2) that you need to supply. You can also apply a manual configuration that persists only until the next reboot or driver restart (Section 4.3.3).

4.3.1 IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP

Setting an IPoIB interface configuration based on DHCP (v3.1.3 which is availabe via www.isc.org) is performed similarly to the configuration of Ethernet interfaces. In other words, you need to make sure that IPoIB configuration files include the following line:

For RedHat:

```
BOOTPROTO=dhcp
```

For SLES:

```
BOOTPROTO='dchp'
```

Note: If IPoIB configuration files are included, `ifcfg-ib<n>` files will be installed under:
`/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/` on a RedHat machine
`/etc/sysconfig/network/` on a SuSE machine

Note: A patch for DHCP is required for supporting IPoIB. The patch file for DHCP v3.1.3, `dhcp.patch`, is available under the `docs/` directory.

Standard DHCP fields holding MAC addresses are not large enough to contain an IPoIB hardware address. To overcome this problem, DHCP over InfiniBand messages convey a client identifier field used to identify the DHCP session. This client identifier field can be used to associate an IP address with a client identifier value, such that the DHCP server will grant the same IP address to any client that conveys this client identifier.

The length of the client identifier field is not fixed in the specification. For the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* package, it is recommended to have IPoIB use the same format that FlexBoot uses for this client identifier – see Section A.2.4, "Configuring the DHCP Server," on page 190.

4.3.1.1 DHCP Server

In order for the DHCP server to provide configuration records for clients, an appropriate configuration file needs to be created. By default, the DHCP server looks for a configuration file called `dhcpd.conf` under `/etc`. You can either edit this file or create a new one and provide its full path to the DHCP server using the -cf flag. See a file example at `docs/dhcpd.conf` of this package.

The DHCP server must run on a machine which has loaded the IPoIB module.

To run the DHCP server from the command line, enter:

```
dhcpd <IB network interface name> -d
```

Example:

```
host1# dhcpd ib0 -d
```

4.3.1.2 DHCP Client (Optional)

Note: A DHCP client can be used if you need to prepare a diskless machine with an IB driver. See Step 8 under "Example: Adding an IB Driver to initrd (Linux)".

In order to use a DHCP client identifier, you need to first create a configuration file that defines the DHCP client identifier. Then run the DHCP client with this file using the following command:

```
dhclient -cf <client conf file> <IB network interface name>
```

Example of a configuration file for the ConnectX (PCI Device ID 26428), called `dhclient.conf`:

```
# The value indicates a hexadecimal number
interface "ib1" {
send dhcp-client-identifier
ff:00:00:00:00:02:00:00:02:c9:00:00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:39;
}
```

Example of a configuration file for InfiniHost III Ex (PCI Device ID 25218), called `dhclient.conf`:

```
# The value indicates a hexadecimal number
interface "ib1" {
send dhcp-client-identifier
20:00:55:04:01:fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:02:c9:02:00:23:13:92;
}
```

In order to use the configuration file, run:

```
host1# dhclient -cf dhclient.conf ib1
```

4.3.2 Static IPoIB Configuration

If you wish to use an IPoIB configuration that is not based on DHCP, you need to supply the installation script with a configuration file (using the '-n' option) containing the full IP configuration. The IPoIB configuration file can specify either or both of the following data for an IPoIB interface:

- A static IPoIB configuration
- An IPoIB configuration based on an Ethernet configuration

Note: See your Linux distribution documentation for additional information about configuring IP addresses.

The following code lines are an excerpt from a sample IPoIB configuration file:

```
# Static settings; all values provided by this file
IPADDR_ib0=11.4.3.175
NETMASK_ib0=255.255.0.0
NETWORK_ib0=11.4.0.0
BROADCAST_ib0=11.4.255.255
ONBOOT_ib0=1
# Based on eth0; each '*' will be replaced with a corresponding octet
# from eth0.
LAN_INTERFACE_ib0=eth0
IPADDR_ib0=11.4.'*'.'*'
NETMASK_ib0=255.255.0.0
```

```
NETWORK_ib0=11.4.0.0
BROADCAST_ib0=11.4.255.255
ONBOOT_ib0=1
# Based on the first eth<n> interface that is found (for n=0,1,...);
# each '*' will be replaced with a corresponding octet from eth<n>.
LAN_INTERFACE_ib0=
IPADDR_ib0=11.4.'*'.'*'
NETMASK_ib0=255.255.0.0
NETWORK_ib0=11.4.0.0
BROADCAST_ib0=11.4.255.255
ONBOOT_ib0=1
```

4.3.3 Manually Configuring IPoIB

To manually configure IPoIB for the default IB partition (VLAN), perform the following steps:

Note: This manual configuration persists only until the next reboot or driver restart.

Step 1. To configure the interface, enter the **`ifconfig`** command with the following items:

- The appropriate IB interface (ib0, ib1, etc.)
- The IP address that you want to assign to the interface
- The netmask keyword
- The subnet mask that you want to assign to the interface

The following example shows how to configure an IB interface:

```
host1$ ifconfig ib0 11.4.3.175 netmask 255.255.0.0
```

Step 2. (Optional) Verify the configuration by entering the **`ifconfig`** command with the appropriate interface identifier *ib#* argument.

The following example shows how to verify the configuration:

```
host1$ ifconfig ib0
b0  Link encap:UNSPEC  HWaddr 80-00-04-04-FE-80-00-00-00-00-00-00-
00-00-00-00
inet addr:11.4.3.175  Bcast:11.4.255.255  Mask:255.255.0.0
UP BROADCAST MULTICAST  MTU:65520  Metric:1
RX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:128
RX bytes:0 (0.0 b)  TX bytes:0 (0.0 b)
```

Step 3. Repeat Step 1 and Step 2 on the remaining interface(s).

4.4 Subinterfaces

You can create subinterfaces for a primary IPoIB interface to provide traffic isolation. Each such subinterface (also called a child interface) has a different IP and network addresses from the primary (parent) interface. The default Partition Key (PKey), ff:ff, applies to the primary (parent) interface.

This section describes how to

- Create a subinterface (Section 4.4.1)
- Remove a subinterface (Section 4.4.2)

4.4.1 Creating a Subinterface

To create a child interface (subinterface), follow this procedure:

Note: In the following procedure, `ib0` is used as an example of an IB subinterface.

Step 1. Decide on the PKey to be used in the subnet. Valid values are 0-255. The actual PKey used is a 16-bit number with the most significant bit set. For example, a value of 0 will give a PKey with the value 0x8000.

Step 2. Create a child interface by running:

```
host1$ echo <PKey> > /sys/class/net/<IB subinterface>/create_child
```

Example:

```
host1$ echo 0 > /sys/class/net/ib0/create_child
```

This will create the interface ib0.8000.

Step 3. Verify the configuration of this interface by running:

```
host1$ ifconfig <subinterface>.<subinterface PKey>
```

Using the example of Step 2:

```
host1$ ifconfig ib0.8000
ib0.8000  Link encap:UNSPEC  HWaddr 80-00-00-4A-FE-80-00-00-00-00-
00-00-00-00-00-00
BROADCAST MULTICAST  MTU:2044  Metric:1
RX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:128
RX bytes:0 (0.0 b)  TX bytes:0 (0.0 b)
```

Step 4. As can be seen, the interface does not have IP or network addresses. To configure those, you should follow the manual configuration procedure described in Section 4.3.3.

Step 5. To be able to use this interface, a configuration of the Subnet Manager is needed so that the PKey chosen, which defines a broadcast address, be recognized (see Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager").

4.4.2 Removing a Subinterface

To remove a child interface (subinterface), run:

```
echo <subinterface PKey> /sys/class/net/<ib_interface>/delete_child
```

Using the example of Step 2:

```
echo 0x8000 > /sys/class/net/ib0/delete_child
```

Note that when deleting the interface you must use the PKey value with the most significant bit set (e.g., 0x8000 in the example above).

4.5 Verifying IPoIB Functionality

To verify your configuration and your IPoIB functionality, perform the following steps:

Step 1. Verify the IPoIB functionality by using the **`ifconfig`** command.

The following example shows how two IB nodes are used to verify IPoIB functionality. In the following example, IB node 1 is at 11.4.3.175, and IB node 2 is at 11.4.3.176:

```
host1# ifconfig ib0 11.4.3.175 netmask 255.255.0.0
host2# ifconfig ib0 11.4.3.176 netmask 255.255.0.0
```

Step 2. Enter the ping command from 11.4.3.175 to 11.4.3.176.

The following example shows how to enter the ping command:

```
host1# ping -c 5 11.4.3.176
PING 11.4.3.176 (11.4.3.176) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 11.4.3.176: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=0.079 ms
64 bytes from 11.4.3.176: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.044 ms
64 bytes from 11.4.3.176: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.055 ms
64 bytes from 11.4.3.176: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.049 ms
64 bytes from 11.4.3.176: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.065 ms
--- 11.4.3.176 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 3999ms rtt
min/avg/max/mdev = 0.044/0.058/0.079/0.014 ms, pipe 2
```

4.6 The ib-bonding Driver

The ib-bonding driver is a High Availability solution for IPoIB interfaces. It is based on the Linux Ethernet Bonding Driver and was adapted to work with IPoIB. The ib-bonding package contains a bonding driver and a utility called ib-bond to manage and control the driver operation.

The ib-bonding driver comes with the ib-bonding package (run "`rpm -qi ib-bonding`" to get the package information).

4.6.1 Using the ib-bonding Driver

The ib-bonding driver can be loaded manually or automatically.

Manual Operation

Use the utility `ib-bond` to start, query, or stop the driver. For details on this utility, please read the documentation for the ib-bonding package under

`/usr/share/doc/ib-bonding-0.9.0/ib-bonding.txt` on RedHat, and

`/usr/share/doc/packages/ib-bonding-0.9.0/ib-bonding.txt` on SuSE.

Automatic Operation

There are two ways to configure automatic ib-bonding operation:

1. Using the openibd configuration file, as described in the following steps:
   a. Edit the file `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` to define bonding parameters.
   Example:

```
# Enable the bonding driver on startup.
IPOIBBOND_ENABLE=yes
# # Set bond interface names
IPOIB_BONDS=bond0,bond8007
# Set specific bond params; address and slaves
bond0_IP=10.10.10.1/24
bond0_SLAVES=ib0,ib1
bond8007_IP=20.10.10.1
bond1_SLAVES=ib0.8007,ib1.8007
```

   b. Restart the driver by running:

```
/etc/init.d/openibd restart
```

2. Using a standard OS bonding configuration. For details on this, please read the documentation for the ib-bonding package under

   `/usr/share/doc/ib-bonding-0.9.0/ib-bonding.txt` on RedHat, and

   `/usr/share/doc/packages/ib-bonding-0.9.0/ib-bonding.txt` on SuSE.

Notes

- If the bondX name is defined but one of bondX_SLAVES or bondX_IPs is missing, then that specific bond will not be created.
- The bondX name must not contain characters which are disallowed for bash variable names such as '.' and '-'.
- Using `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` to create a persistent configuration is not recommended. Do not use it unless you have no other option. It is not guaranteed that the first method will be supported in future versions of OFED.

4.7 IPoIB Performance Tuning

When IPoIB is configured to run in connected mode, TCP parameter tuning is performed at driver startup to improve the throughput of medium and large messages.

4.8 Testing IPoIB Performance

This section describes how to verify IPoIB performance by running the Bandwidth (BW) test and the Latency test. These tests are described in detail at the following URL:

http://www.netperf.org/netperf/training/Netperf.html

Note: For UDP best performance, please use IPoIB in Datagram mode and *not* in Connected mode.

To verify IPoIB performance, perform the following steps:

Step 1. Download Netperf from the following URL:
http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html

Step 2. Compile Netperf by following the instructions at
http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html.

Step 3. Start the Netperf server.
The following example shows how to start the Netperf server:

```
host1$ netserver
Starting netserver at port 12865
Starting netserver at hostname 0.0.0.0 port 12865 and family
AF_UNSPEC
host1$
```

Step 4. Run the Netperf client. The default test is the Bandwidth test.
The following example shows how to run the Netperf client, which starts the Bandwidth test by default:

```
host2$ netperf -H 11.4.17.6 -t TCP_STREAM -c -C -- -m 65536
TCP STREAM TEST from 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0) port 0 AF_INET to 11.4.17.6 (11.4.17.6) port 0
AF_INET
Recv   Send    Send                          Utilization       Service Demand
Socket Socket  Message  Elapsed              Send     Recv     Send    Recv
Size   Size    Size     Time     Throughput  local    remote   local   remote
bytes  bytes   bytes    secs.    10^6bits/s  % S      % S      us/KB   us/KB

 87380  16384  65536    10.00      2483.00   7.03     5.42     1.854   1.431
```

Note: You must specify the IPoIB IP address when running the Netperf client.

The following table describes parameters for the netperf command:

Option	Description
-H	Where to find the server
11.4.17.6	IPoIB IP address
-t <Test Name>	Specify the test to perform. Options are TCP_STREAM, TCP_RR, etc.
-c	Client CPU utilization
-C	Server CPU utilization
--	Separates the global and test-specific parameters
-m	Message size, which is 65536 in the example above

Note that the run example above produced the following results:

- Throughput is 2.483 gigabits per second
- Client CPU utilization is 7.03 percent of client CPU
- Server CPU utilization is 5.42 percent of server CPU

Step 5. Run the Netperf Latency test.

Run the test once, and stop the server so that it does not repeat the test.

The following example shows how to run the Latency test, and then stop the Netperf server:

```
host2$ netperf -H 11.4.17.6 -t TCP_RR -c -C -- -r1,1
TCP REQUEST/RESPONSE TEST from 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0) port 0 AF_INET to 11.4.17.6 (11.4.17.6)
port 0 AF_INET
Local /Remote
Socket Size   Request Resp.  Elapsed Trans.   CPU    CPU    S.dem   S.dem
Send   Recv   Size    Size   Time    Rate     local  remote local   remote
bytes  bytes  bytes   bytes  secs.   per sec  % S    % S    us/Tr   us/Tr

16384  87380  1       1      10.00   19913.18  5.61   6.79   22.549  27.296
16384  87380
```

The following table describes parameters for the netperf command:

Option	Description
-H	Where to find the server
11.4.17.6	IPoIB IP address
-t <Test Name>	Specify the test to perform. Options are TCP_STREAM, TCP_RR, etc.
-c	Client CPU utilization
-C	Server CPU utilization

Option	Description
--	Separates the global and test-specific parameters
-r 1,1	The request size sent and how many bytes requested back

Note that the run example above produced the following results:

- Client CPU utilization is 5.61 percent of client CPU
- Server CPU utilization is 6.79 percent of server CPU
- Latency is 25.11 microseconds. Latency is calculated as follows:
  0.5*(1 / Transaction rate per sec) * 1,000,000 = one-way average latency in usec.

Step 6. To end the test, shut down the Netperf server.

```
host1$ pkill netserver
```

5 RoCE

5.1 Overview

RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) allows InfiniBand (IB) transport over Ethernet networks. It encapsulates IB transport and GRH headers in Ethernet packets bearing a dedicated ether type.

While the use of GRH is optional within IB subnets, it is mandatory when using RoCE. Verbs applications written over IB verbs should work seamlessly, but they require provisioning of GRH information when creating address vectors. The library and driver are modified to provide for mapping from GID to MAC addresses required by the hardware.

5.2 Software Dependencies

In order to use RoCE over Mellanox ConnectX(R) hardware, the mlx4_en driver must be loaded. Please refer to MLNX_EN_README.txt for further details.

5.3 General Guidelines

Since RoCE encapsulates InfiniBand traffic in Ethernet frames, the corresponding net device must be up and running. In case of Mellanox hardware, mlx4_en must be loaded and the corresponding interface configured.

- Make sure that `mlx4_en.ko` is loaded
- Make sure an IP address has been configured to this interface
- Run "ibv_devinfo". There is a new field named "link_layer" which can be either "Ethernet" or "IB". If the value is IB, then you need to use connectx_port_config to change the ConnectX/ConnectX-2 ports designation to eth (see mlx4_release_notes.txt for details)
- Configure the IP address of the interface so that the link will become active
- All IB verbs applications which run over IB verbs should work on RoCE links as long as they use GRH headers (that is, as long as they specify use of GRH in their address vector)

5.4 Ported Applications

The following applications are ported with RoCE:

- ibv_*_pingpong examples are ported. The user must specify the GID of the remote peer using the new '-g' option. The GID has the same format as that in /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/1/gids/0

  Note: Care should be taken when using ibv_ud_pingpong. The default message size is 2K, which is likely to exceed the MTU of the RoCE link. Use ibv_devinfo to inspect the link MTU and specify an appropriate message size.

- All rdma_cm applications should work seamlessly without any change

- libsdp works without any change
- Performance tests

5.5 GID Tables

With RoCE, there may be several entries in a port's GID table. The first entry always contains the IPv6 link's local address of the corresponding Ethernet interface. The link's local address is formed in the following way:

```
gid[0..7] = fe80000000000000
gid[8] = mac[0] ^ 2
gid[9] = mac[1]
gid[10] = mac[2]
gid[11] = ff
gid[12] = fe
gid[13] = mac[3]
gid[14] = mac[4]
gid[15] = mac[5]
```

If VLAN is supported by the kernel and there are VLAN interfaces on the main Ethernet interface (the interface that the IB port is tied to), then each such VLAN will appear as a new GID in the port's GID table. The format of the GID entry will be identical to the one described above, except for the following change:

```
gid[11] = VLAN ID high byte (4 MS bits).
gid[12] = VLAN ID low byte
```

Please note that VLAN ID is 12 bits wide.

5.5.1 Priority Pause Frames

Tagged Ethernet frames carry a 3-bit priority field. The value of this field is derived from the IB SL field by taking the 3 least significant bits of the SL field.

5.6 Using VLANs

In order for RoCE traffic to use VLAN tagged frames, the user needs to specify GID table entries that are derived from VLAN devices when creating address vectors. Consider the example below.

- Make sure VLAN support is enabled by the kernel. Usually this requires loading the 8021q module.

  > modprobe 8021q

- Add a VLAN device

  > vconfig add eth2 7

- Assign an IP address to the VLAN interface. This should create a new entry in the GID table (as index 1)

> ifconfig eth2.7 7.10.11.12

- Verbs test

  On server: > ibv_rc_pingpong -g 1

  On client: > ibv_rc_pingpongs -g 1 server

- For rdma_cm applications, the user needs only to specify an IP address of a VLAN device for the traffic to go with the VLAN tagged frames.

5.7 A Detailed Example

This section provides a step-by-step example of using InfiniBand over Ethernet (RoCE).

Installation and Driver Loading

The MLNX OFED installation script installs RoCE as part of mlx4 and mlx4_en and other modules. See Section 2.3, "Installing Mellanox OFED" for details on installation.

Note: The list of the modules that will be loaded automatically upon boot can be found in the configuration file /etc/infiniband/openib.conf.

Enter the following command to display the current run of MLNX OFED.

```
# ibv_devinfo
hca_id: mlx4_0
        transport:                      InfiniBand (0)
        fw_ver:                         2.7.700
        node_guid:                      0002:c903:0008:e810
        sys_image_guid:                 0002:c903:0008:e813
        vendor_id:                      0x02c9
        vendor_part_id:                 26428
        hw_ver:                         0xB0
        board_id:                       MT_0DD0120009
        phys_port_cnt:                  2
                port:   1
                        state:                  PORT_INIT (2)
                        max_mtu:                2048 (4)
                        active_mtu:             2048 (4)
                        sm_lid:                 0
                        port_lid:               0
                        port_lmc:               0x00
                        link_layer:             IB

                port:   2
                       state:                  PORT_ACTIVE (4)
```

```
                        max_mtu:                2048 (4)
                        active_mtu:             1024 (3)
                        sm_lid:                 0
                        port_lid:               0
                        port_lmc:               0x00
                        link_layer:             Ethernet
#
```

Notes regarding the command output:

1. The InfiniBand port (port 1) is in PORT_INIT state, and the Ethernet port (port 2) is in PORT_ACTIVE state. You can also run the following commands to obtain the port state.

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/1/state
2: INIT
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/state
4: ACTIVE
#
```

2. Look at the link_layer parameter of each port. In this case port 1 is IB and port 2 is Ethernet. Nevertheless, port 2 appears in the list of the HCA's ports. You can also run the following commands to obtain the link_layer of the two ports:

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/1/link_layer
InfiniBand
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/link_layer
Ethernet
#
```

3. The firmware version is 2.7.700 (appears at the top). You can also run the following command to obtain the firmware version:

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/fw_ver
2.7.700
#
```

4. The IB over Ethernet's Port MTU is 2K byte at maximum, however the actual MTU cannot exceed the mlx4_en interface's MTU. Since the mlx4_en interface's MTU is 1560, port 2 will run with MTU of 1K.

Association of IB Ports to Ethernet Ports

It is useful to know how IB ports associate to network ports.

```
# ibdev2netdev
mlx4_0 port 2 <===> eth2
mlx4_0 port 1 <===> ib0
#
```

Since both RoCE and mlx4_en use the Ethernet port of the adapter, one of the drivers must carry the task of controlling the port state. In this implementation, it is the task of the mlx4_en driver. The mlx4_ib driver holds a reference to the mlx4_en net device for getting notifications about the state of the port, as well as using the mlx4_en driver to resolve IP addresses to MAC that are required for address vector creation. However, RoCE traffic does not go through the mlx4_en driver; it is completely offloaded by the hardware.

Configre an IP Address to mlx4_en Interface

Run the following on both sides of the link.

```
# ifconfig eth2 20.4.3.220
# ifconfig eth2
eth2      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:02:C9:08:E8:11
          inet addr:20.4.3.220  Bcast:20.255.255.255  Mask:255.0.0.0
          UP BROADCAST MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
          RX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:0 (0.0 b)  TX bytes:0 (0.0 b)
#
```

Make sure that ping is working:

```
# ping 20.4.3.219
PING 20.4.3.219 (20.4.3.219) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 20.4.3.219: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.873 ms
64 bytes from 20.4.3.219: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.198 ms
64 bytes from 20.4.3.219: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.167 ms

--- 20.4.3.219 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.167/0.412/0.873/0.326 ms
```

Inspecting the GID Table

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/gids/0
fe80:0000:0000:0000:0202:c9ff:fe08:e811
#
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/gids/1
0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
#
```

According to the output, we currently have one entry only.

Run an Example Test - ibv_rc_pingpong

Start the server first:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 0 -i 2
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x00004f, PSN 0x3315f6, GID
fe80::202:c9ff:fe08:e799
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x04004f, PSN 0x2cdede, GID
fe80::202:c9ff:fe08:e811
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4730.13 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.85 usec/iter
#
```

Then start the client:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 0 -i 2 sw419
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x04004f, PSN 0x2cdede, GID
fe80::202:c9ff:fe08:e811
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x00004f, PSN 0x3315f6, GID
fe80::202:c9ff:fe08:e799
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4787.84 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.69 usec/iter
#
```

Add VLANs

Make sure that the 8021.q module is loaded:

```
# modprobe 8021q
```

Add the VLAN device:

```
# vconfig add eth2 7
Added VLAN with VID == 7 to IF -:eth2:-
#
```

Configure an IP address for it:

```
# ifconfig eth2.7 7.4.3.220
```

Examine the GID table:

```
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/gids/0
fe80:0000:0000:0000:0202:c9ff:fe08:e811
#
# cat /sys/class/infiniband/mlx4_0/ports/2/gids/1
fe80:0000:0000:0000:0202:c900:0708:e811
```

According to the output, we now have two entries.

Run the Example Again, Not on VLAN

On Server:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 1 -i 2
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x04004f, PSN 0xbdde2c, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e799
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x08004f, PSN 0xc9d800, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e811
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4824.50 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.58 usec/iter
```

On Client:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 1 -i 2 sw419
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x08004f, PSN 0xc9d800, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e811
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x04004f, PSN 0xbdde2c, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e799
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4844.83 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.53 usec/iter
```

Defining Ethernet Priority (PCP in 802.1q Headers)

On Server:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 1 -i 2 -l 4
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x1c004f, PSN 0x9daf6c, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e799
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x1c004f, PSN 0xb0a49b, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e811
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4840.89 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.54 usec/iter
```

On Client:

```
# ibv_rc_pingpong -g 1 -i 2 -l 4 sw419
local address:  LID 0x0000, QPN 0x1c004f, PSN 0xb0a49b, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e811
remote address: LID 0x0000, QPN 0x1c004f, PSN 0x9daf6c, GID
fe80::202:c900:708:e799
8192000 bytes in 0.01 seconds = 4855.96 Mbit/sec
1000 iters in 0.01 seconds = 13.50 usec/iter
```

Using rdma_cm Tests

On Server:

```
# ucmatose
cmatose: starting server
initiating data transfers
completing sends
receiving data transfers
data transfers complete
cmatose: disconnecting
disconnected
test complete
return status 0
#
```

On Client:

```
# ucmatose -s 20.4.3.219
cmatose: starting client
cmatose: connecting
receiving data transfers
sending replies
data transfers complete
test complete
return status 0
#
```

This server-client run is without PCP or VLAN because the IP address used does not belong to a VLAN interface. If you specify a VLAN IP address, then traffic should go over VLAN.

Type Of Service (TOS)

The TOS field for rdma_cm sockets can be set using the rdma_set_option() API, just as it is set for regualr sockets. If the user does not set a TOS, the default value (0) will be used. Within the rdma_cm kernel driver, the TOS field is converted into an SL field. The conversion formual is as follows:

SL = TOS >> 5 (e.g., take the 3 most significant bits of the TOS field)

In the hardware driver, the SL field is converted into PCP by the following formula:

PCP = SL & 7 (take the 3 least significant bits of the TOS field)

Note: SL affects the PCP only when the traffic goes over tagged VLAN frames.

6 RDS

6.1 Overview

Reliable Datagram Sockets (RDS) is a socket API that provides reliable, in-order datagram delivery between sockets over RC or TCP/IP. RDS is intended for use with Oracle RAC 11g.

For programming details, enter:

```
host1$ man rds
```

6.2 RDS Configuration

The RDS ULP is installed as part of Mellanox OFED for Linux. To load the RDS module upon boot, edit the file `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` and set "RDS_LOAD=yes".

Note: For the changes to take effect, run: `/etc/init.d/openibd restart`

7 SDP

7.1 Overview

Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP) is an InfiniBand byte-stream transport protocol that provides TCP stream semantics. Capable of utilizing InfiniBand's advanced protocol offload capabilities, SDP can provide lower latency, higher bandwidth, and lower CPU utilization than IPoIB or Ethernet running some sockets-based applications.

SDP can be used by applications and improve their performance transparently (that is, without any recompilation). Since SDP has the same socket semantics as TCP, an existing application is able to run using SDP; the difference is that the application's TCP socket gets replaced with an SDP socket.

It is also possible to configure the driver to automatically translate TCP to SDP based on the source IP/port, the destination, or the application name. See Section 7.5.

The SDP protocol is composed of a kernel module that implements the SDP as a new address-family/protocol-family, and a library (see Section 7.2) that is used for replacing the TCP address family with SDP according to a policy.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- "libsdp.so Library" on page 71
- "Configuring SDP" (page 71)
- "Environment Variables" (page 74)
- "Converting Socket-based Applications" (page 74)
- "BZCopy – Zero Copy Send" (page 82)
- "Using RDMA for Small Buffers" (page 82)
- "Testing SDP Performance" (page 82)

7.2 libsdp.so Library

`libsdp.so` is a dynamically linked library, which is used for transparent integration of applications with SDP. The library is preloaded, and therefore takes precedence over glibc for certain socket calls. Thus, it can transparently replace the TCP socket family with SDP socket calls.

The library also implements a user-level socket switch. Using a configuration file, the system administrator can set up the policy that selects the type of socket to be used. `libsdp.so` also has the option to allow server sockets to listen on both SDP and TCP interfaces. The various configurations with SDP/TCP sockets are explained inside the `/etc/libsdp.conf` file.

7.3 Configuring SDP

To load SDP upon boot, edit the file `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` and set "SDP_LOAD=yes".

Note: For the changes to take effect, run: `/etc/init.d/openibd restart`

SDP can work over IPoIB interfaces or RoCE interfaces. In case of IPoIB, SDP uses the same IP addresses and interface names as IPoIB (see IPoIB configuration in Section 4.3 and Section 4.3.3). In case of RoCE, SDP use the same IP addresses and interface names of the corresponding mlx4_en interfaces (see mlx4_en configuration in Section 3.3 and Section 3.3.4).

7.3.1 How to Know SDP Is Working

Since SDP is a transparent TCP replacement, it can sometimes be difficult to know that it is working correctly. To check whether traffic is passing through SDP or TCP, monitor the file /proc/net/sdpstats and see which counters are running.

7.3.1.1 Alternative Method – Using the sdpnetstat Program

The `sdpnetstat` program can be used to verify both that SDP is loaded and is being used. The following command shows all active SDP sockets using the same format as the traditional `netstat` program. Without the '-S' option, it shows all the information that `netstat` does plus SDP data.

```
host1$ sdpnetstat -S
```

Assuming that the SDP kernel module is loaded and is being used, then the output of the command will be as follows:

```
host1$ sdpnetstat -S
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address           Foreign Address
sdp        0      0 193.168.10.144:34216    193.168.10.125:12865
sdp        0 884720 193.168.10.144:42724    193.168.10.:filenet-rmi
```

The example output above shows two active SDP sockets and contains details about the connections.

If the SDP kernel module is not loaded, then the output of the command will be something like the following:

```
host1$ sdpnetstat -S
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address           Foreign Address
netstat: no support for `AF INET (tcp)' on this system.
```

To verify whether the module is loaded or not, you can use the `lsmod` command:

```
host1$ lsmod | grep sdp
ib_sdp   125020    0
```

The example output above shows that the SDP module is loaded.

If the SDP module *is* loaded and the `sdpnetstat` command did not show SDP sockets, then SDP is not being used by any application.

7.3.2 Monitoring and Troubleshooting Tools

SDP has debug support for both the user space `libsdp.so` library and the `ib_sdp` kernel module.. Both can be useful to understand why a TCP socket was not redirected over SDP and to help find problems in the SDP implementation.

User Space SDP Debug

User-space SDP debug is controlled by options in the `libsdp.conf` file. You can also have a local version and point to it explicitly using the following command:

```
host1$ export LIBSDP_CONFIG_FILE=<path>/libsdp.conf
```

To obtain extensive debug information, you can modify `libsdp.conf` to have the `log` directive produce maximum debug output (provide the `min-level` flag with the value 1).

The **`log`** statement enables the user to specify the debug and error messages that are to be sent and their destination. The syntax of **`log`** is as follows:

```
log [destination (stderr | syslog | file <filename>)] [min-level 1-9]
```

where options are:

destination	send log messages to the specified destination:
	stderr: forward messages to the STDERR
	syslog: send messages to the syslog service
	file <filename>: write messages to the file /var/log/filename for root. For a regular user, write to /tmp/<filename>.<uid> if filename is not specified as a full path; otherwise, write to <path>/<filename>.<uid>
min-level	verbosity level of the log:
	9: print errors only
	8: print warnings
	7: print connect and listen summary (useful for tracking SDP usage)
	4: print positive match summary (useful for config file debug)
	3: print negative match summary (useful for config file debug)
	2: print function calls and return values
	1: print debug messages

Examples:

To print SDP usage per connect and listern to STDERR, include the following statement:

```
log min-level 7 destination stderr
```

A non-root user can configure `libsdp.so` to record function calls and return values in the file `/tmp/libsdp.log.<pid>` (root log goes to `/var/log/libsdp.log` for this example) by including the following statement in `libsdp.conf`:

```
log min-level 2 destination file libsdp.log
```

To print errors only to syslog, include the following statement:

```
log min-level 9 destination syslog
```

To print maximum output to the file /tmp/sdp_debug.log.<pid>, include the following statement:

```
log min-level 1 destination file sdp_debug.log
```

Kernel Space SDP Debug

The SDP kernel module can log detailed trace information if you enable it using the 'debug_level' variable in the sysfs filesystem. The following command performs this:

```
host1$ echo 1 > /sys/module/ib_sdp/debug_level
```

Note: Depending on the operating system distribution on your machine, you may need an extra level—parameters— in the directory structure, so you may need to direct the echo command to /sys/module/ib_sdp/parameters/debug_level.

Turning off kernel debug is done by setting the sysfs variable to zero using the following command:

```
host1$ echo 0 > /sys/module/ib_sdp/debug_level
```

To display debug information, use the dmesg command:

```
host1$ dmesg
```

7.4 Environment Variables

For the transparent integration with SDP, the following two environment variables are required:

1. LD_PRELOAD – this environment variable is used to preload libsdp.so and it should point to the libsdp.so library. The variable should be set by the system administrator to /usr/lib/libsdp.so (or /usr/lib64/libspd.so).
2. LIBSDP_CONFIG_FILE – this environment variable is used to configure the policy for replacing TCP sockets with SDP sockets. By default it points to: /etc/libsdp.conf.
3. SIMPLE_LIBSDP – ignore libsdp.conf and always use SDP

7.5 Converting Socket-based Applications

You can convert a socket-based application to use SDP instead of TCP in an automatic (also called transparent) mode or in an explicit (also called non-transparent) mode.

Automatic (Transparent) Conversion

The libsdp.conf configuration (policy) file is used to control the automatic transparent replacement of TCP sockets with SDP sockets. In this mode, socket streams are converted based upon a destination port, a listening port, or a program name.

Socket control statements in libsdp.conf allow the user to specify when libsdp should replace AF_INET/SOCK_STREAM sockets with AF_SDP/SOCK_STREAM sockets. Each control state-

ment specifies a matching rule that applies if all its subexpressions must evaluate as true (logical and).

The `use` statement controls which type of sockets to open. The format of a `use` statement is as follows:

```
use <address-family> <role> <program-name|*> <address|*>:<port range|*>
```

where

`<address-family>`

can be one of

sdp: for specifying when an SDP should be used

tcp: for specifying when an SDP socket should not be matched

both: for specifying when both SDP and AF_INET sockets should be used

Note that *both* semantics is different for *server* and *client* roles. For *server*, it means that the *server* will be listening on both SDP and TCP sockets. For *client*, the connect function will first attempt to use SDP and will silently fall back to TCP if the SDP connection fails.

`<role>`

can be one of

server or listen: for defining the listening port address family

client or connect: for defining the connected port address family

`<program-name|*>`

Defines the program name the rule applies to (not including the path). Wildcards with same semantics as 'ls' are supported (* and ?). So db2* would match on any program with a name starting with db2. t?cp would match on ttcp, etc.

If program-name is not provided (default), the statement matches all programs.

`<address|*>`

Either the local address to which the server binds, or the remote server address to which the client connects. The syntax for address matching is:

<IPv4 address>[/<prefix_length>]|*

IPv4 address = [0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+\.[0-9]+ each sub number < 255

prefix_length = [0-9]+ and with value <= 32. A prefix_length of 24 matches the subnet mask 255.255.255.0. A prefix_length of 32 requires matching of the exact IP.

`<port range>`

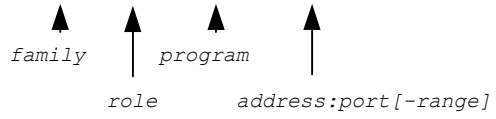
start-port[-end-port] where port numbers are >0 and <65536

Note that rules are evaluated in the order of definition. So the first match wins. If no match is made, `libsdp` will default to `both`.

Examples:

- Use SDP by clients connecting to machines that belongs to subnet 192.168.1.*

```
use sdp connect *  192.168.1.0/24:*
```



- Use SDP by ttcp when it connects to port 5001 of any machine

```
use sdp    listen  ttcp      *:5001
```

- Use TCP for any program with name starting with ttcp* serving ports 22 to 25

```
use tcp    server  ttcp*     *:22-25
```

- Listen on both TCP and SDP by any server that listen on port 8080

```
use both   server  *         *:8080
```

- Connect ssh through SDP and fallback to TCP to hosts on 11.4.8.* port 22

```
use both   connect *         11.4.8.0/24:22
```

Explicit (Non-transparent) Conversion

Use explicit conversion if you need to maintain full control from your application while using SDP. To configure an explicit conversion to use SDP, simply recompile the application replacing PF_INET (or PF_INET) with AF_INET_SDP (or AF_INET_SDP) when calling the `socket()` system call in the source code. The value of AF_INET_SDP is defined in the file `sdp_socket.h` or you can define it inline:

```
#define AF_INET_SDP 27
#define PF_INET_SDP AF_INET_SDP
```

You can compile and execute the following very simple TCP application that has been converted explicitly to SDP:

Compilation:

```
gcc sdp_server.c -o sdp_server
gcc sdp_client.c -o sdp_client
```

Usage:

Server:

```
host1$ sdp_server
```

Client:

```
host1$ sdp_client <server IP addr>
```

Example:

Server:

```
host1$ ./sdp_server
accepted connection from 15.2.2.42:48710
read 2048 bytes
end of test
host1$
```

Client:

```
host2$  ./sdp_client 15.2.2.43
connected to 15.2.2.43:22222
sent 2048 bytes
```

```
host2$
```

sdp_client.c Code

```
/*
 *  usage: ./sdp_client <ip_addr>
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <unistd.h>
#include <string.h>

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/socket.h>
#include <netinet/in.h>
#include <arpa/inet.h>

#define DEF_PORT 22222

#define AF_INET_SDP 27
#define PF_INET_SDP AF_INET_SDP

#define TXBUFSZ 2048
uint8_t tx_buffer[TXBUFSZ];

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    if ( argc < 2) {
        printf("Usage: sdp_client <ip_addr>\n");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    int sd = socket(PF_INET_SDP, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
    if ( sd < 0) {
        perror("socket() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
```

```
    struct sockaddr_in to_addr = {
        .sin_family = AF_INET,
        .sin_port = htons(DEF_PORT),
    };

    int ip_ret = inet_aton(argv[1], &to_addr.sin_addr);
    if ( ip_ret == 0) {
        printf("invalid ip address '%s'\n", argv[1]);
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    int conn_ret = connect(sd, (struct sockaddr *) &to_addr,
sizeof(to_addr));
    if ( conn_ret < 0) {
        perror("connect() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    printf("connected to %s:%u\n",
            inet_ntoa(to_addr.sin_addr),
            ntohs(to_addr.sin_port) );


    ssize_t nw = write(sd, tx_buffer, TXBUFSZ);
    if ( nw < 0) {
        perror("write() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    } else if ( nw == 0) {
        printf("socket was closed by remote host\n");
    }

    printf("sent %zd bytes\n", nw);

    close(sd);

    return 0;
}
```

sdp_server.c Code

```
/*
```

```
 * Usage: ./sdp_server
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <unistd.h>

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/socket.h>
#include <netinet/in.h>
#include <arpa/inet.h>
#include <sys/epoll.h>
#include <errno.h>
#include <assert.h>

#define RXBUFSZ 2048

uint8_t rx_buffer[RXBUFSZ];

#define DEF_PORT 22222

#define AF_INET_SDP 27
#define PF_INET_SDP AF_INET_SDP

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{

    int sd = socket(PF_INET_SDP, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
    if ( sd < 0) {
        perror("socket() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    struct sockaddr_in my_addr = {
        .sin_family = AF_INET,
        .sin_port = htons(DEF_PORT),
        .sin_addr.s_addr = INADDR_ANY,
    };
```

```
    int retbind = bind(sd, (struct sockaddr *) &my_addr, sizeof(my_addr)
);
    if ( retbind < 0) {
        perror("bind() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    int retlisten = listen(sd, 5/*backlog*/);
    if ( retlisten < 0) {
        perror("listen() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    // accept the client connection
    struct sockaddr_in client_addr;

    socklen_t client_addr_len = sizeof(client_addr);
    int cd = accept(sd, (struct sockaddr *) &client_addr,
&client_addr_len);
    if ( cd < 0) {
        perror("accept() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    printf("accepted connection from %s:%u\n",
            inet_ntoa(client_addr.sin_addr),
            ntohs(client_addr.sin_port) );

    ssize_t nr = read(cd, rx_buffer, RXBUFSZ);
    if ( nr < 0) {
        perror("read() failed");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    } else if ( nr == 0) {
        printf("socket was closed by remote host\n");
    }

    printf("read %zd bytes\n", nr);

    printf("end of test\n");

    close(cd);
    close(sd);
```

```
        return 0;
    }
```

7.6 BZCopy – Zero Copy Send

BZCOPY mode is only effective for large block transfers. By setting the `/sys` parameter `'sdp_zcopy_thresh'` to a non-zero value, a non-standard SDP speedup is enabled. Messages longer than `'sdp_zcopy_thresh'` bytes in length cause the user space buffer to be pinned and the data to be sent directly from the original buffer. This results in less CPU usage and, on many systems, much higher bandwidth.

Note that the default value of `'sdp_zcopy_thresh'` is 64KB, but is may be too low for some systems. You will need to experiment with your hardware to find the best value.

7.7 Using RDMA for Small Buffers

For smaller buffers, the overhead of preparing a user buffer to be RDMA'ed is too big; therefore, it is more efficient to use BCopy. (Large buffers can also be sent using RDMA, but they lower CPU utilization.) This mode is called “ZCopy combined mode”. The sendmsg syscall is blocked until the buffer is transfered to the socket's peer, and the data is copied directly from the user buffer at the source side to the user buffer at the sink side.

To set the threshold, use the module parameter sdp_zcopy_thresh. This parameter can be accessed through sysfs (/sys/module/ib_sdp/parameters/sdp_zcopy_thresh). Setting it to 0, disables ZCopy.

7.8 Testing SDP Performance

This section describes how to verify SDP performance by running the Bandwidth (BW) test and the Latency test. These tests are described in detail at the following URL:

http://www.netperf.org/netperf/training/Netperf.html

To verify SDP performance, perform the following steps:

Step 1. Download Netperf from the following URL:
http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html

Step 2. Compile Netperf by following the instructions at
http://www.netperf.org/netperf/NetperfPage.html.

Step 3. Create `libsdp.conf` (configuration file).

```
host1# cat > $HOME/libsdp.conf << EOF
> use sdp server * *:*
> use sdp client * *:*
> EOF
```

Step 4. Start the Netperf server such that you force SDP to be used instead of TCP.

```
host1# LD_PRELOAD=libsdp.so LIBSDP_CONFIG_FILE=$HOME/libsdp.conf netserver
Starting netserver at port 12865
Starting netserver at hostname 0.0.0.0 port 12865 and family AF_UNSPEC
```

```
host1#
```

Step 5. Run the Netperf client such that you force SDP to be used instead of TCP. The default test is the Bandwidth test.

```
host2# LD_PRELOAD=libsdp.so LIBSDP_CONFIG_FILE=$HOME/libsdp.conf netperf \
-H 11.4.17.6 -t TCP_STREAM -c -C -- -m 65536
TCP STREAM TEST from 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0) port 0 AF_INET to 11.4.17.6 (11.4.17.6) port 0
AF_INET
Recv   Send    Send                          Utilization       Service Demand
Socket Socket  Message  Elapsed              Send     Recv     Send    Recv
Size   Size    Size     Time     Throughput  local    remote   local   remote
bytes  bytes   bytes    secs.    10^6bits/s  % S      % S      us/KB   us/KB

 87380  16384  65536    10.00      5872.60   19.41    17.12    2.166   1.911
```

Note: You must specify the SDP IP address when running the Netperf client.

The following table describes parameters for the netperf command:

Option	Description
-H	Where to find the server
11.4.17.6	SDP IP address
-t <Test Name>	Specify the test to perform. Options are TCP_STREAM, TCP_RR, etc.
-c	Client CPU utilization
-C	Server CPU utilization
--	Separates the global and test-specific parameters
-m	Message size, which is 65536 in the example above

Note that the run example above produced the following results:

- Throughput is 5.872 gigabits per second
- Client CPU utilization is 19.41 percent of client CPU
- Server CPU utilization is 17.12 percent of server CPU

Step 6. Run the Netperf Latency test such that you force SDP to be used instead of TCP.

Run the test once, and stop the server so that it does not repeat the test.

```
host2# LD_PRELOAD=libsdp.so LIBSDP_CONFIG_FILE=$HOME/libsdp.conf netperf \
-H 11.4.17.6 -t TCP_RR -c -C -- -r1,1
TCP REQUEST/RESPONSE TEST from 0.0.0.0 (0.0.0.0) port 0 AF_INET to 11.4.17.6 (11.4.17.6)
port 0 AF_INET
Local /Remote
Socket Size   Request Resp.  Elapsed Trans.   CPU    CPU    S.dem   S.dem
Send   Recv   Size    Size   Time    Rate     local  remote local   remote
bytes  bytes  bytes   bytes  secs.   per sec  % S    % S    us/Tr   us/Tr
```

```
16384  87380  1       1      10.00   37572.83  15.72  23.36  33.469  49.729
16384  87380
```

The following table describes parameters for the netperf command:

Option	Description
-H	Where to find the server
11.4.17.6	SDP IP address
-t <Test Name>	Specify the test to perform. Options are TCP_STREAM, TCP_RR, etc.
-c	Client CPU utilization
-C	Server CPU utilization
--	Separates the global and test-specific parameters
-r 1,1	The request size sent and how many bytes requested back

Note that the run example above produced the following results:

- Client CPU utilization is 15.72 percent of client CPU
- Server CPU utilization is 23.36 percent of server CPU
- Latency is 13.31 microseconds. Latency is calculated as follows:
  0.5*(1 / Transaction rate per sec) * 1,000,000 = one-way average latency in usec.

Step 7. To end the test, shut down the Netperf server.

```
host1# pkill netserver
```

8 SRP

8.1 Overview

As described in Section 1.4.5, the SCSI RDMA Protocol (SRP) is designed to take full advantage of the protocol offload and RDMA features provided by the InfiniBand architecture. SRP allows a large body of SCSI software to be readily used on InfiniBand architecture. The SRP Initiator controls the connection to an SRP Target in order to provide access to remote storage devices across an InfiniBand fabric. The SRP Target resides in an IO unit and provides storage services.

Section 8.2 describes the SRP Initiator included in Mellanox OFED for Linux. This package, however, does *not* include an SRP Target.

8.2 SRP Initiator

This SRP Initiator is based on open source from OpenFabrics (www.openfabrics.org) that implements the SCSI RDMA Protocol-2 (SRP-2). SRP-2 is described in Document # T10/1524-D available from http://www.t10.org.

The SRP Initiator supports

- Basic SCSI Primary Commands -3 (SPC-3)
  (www.t10.org/ftp/t10/drafts/spc3/spc3r21b.pdf)
- Basic SCSI Block Commands -2 (SBC-2)
  (www.t10.org/ftp/t10/drafts/sbc2/sbc2r16.pdf)
- Basic functionality, task management and limited error handling

8.2.1 Loading SRP Initiator

To load the SRP module, either execute the "modprobe ib_srp" command after the OFED driver is up, or change the value of SRP_LOAD in `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` to "yes".

Note: For the changes to take effect, run: `/etc/init.d/openibd restart`

Note: When loading the ib_srp module, it is possible to set the module parameter srp_sg_tablesize. This is the maximum number of gather/scatter entries per I/O (default: 12).

8.2.2 Manually Establishing an SRP Connection

The following steps describe how to manually load an SRP connection between the Initiator and an SRP Target. Section 8.2.4 explains how to do this automatically.

- Make sure that the `ib_srp` module is loaded, the SRP Initiator is reachable by the SRP Target, and that an SM is running.
- To establish a connection with an SRP Target and create an SRP (SCSI) device for that target under `/dev`, use the following command:

```
echo -n id_ext=[GUID value],ioc_guid=[GUID value],dgid=[port GID value],\
pkey=ffff,service_id=[service[0] value] > \
/sys/class/infiniband_srp/srp-mthca[hca number]-[port number]/add_target
```

See Section 8.2.3 for instructions on how the parameters in this `echo` command may be obtained.

Notes:

- Execution of the above “echo” command may take some time
- The SM must be running while the command executes
- It is possible to include additional parameters in the echo command:
  - max_cmd_per_lun - Default: 63
  - max_sect (short for max_sectors) - sets the request size of a command
  - io_class - Default: 0x100 as in rev 16A of the specification

    (In rev 10 the default was 0xff00)
  - initiator_ext - Please refer to Section 9 (Multiple Connections...)

- To list the new SCSI devices that have been added by the echo command, you may use either of the following two methods:
  - Execute “fdisk -l”. This command lists all devices; the new devices are included in this listing.
  - Execute “dmesg” or `look at /var/log/messages` to find messages with the names of the new devices.

8.2.3 SRP Tools - ibsrpdm and srp_daemon

To assist in performing the steps in Section 6, the OFED distribution provides two utilities, ibsrpdm and srp_daemon, which

- Detect targets on the fabric reachable by the Initiator (for Step 1)
- Output target attributes in a format suitable for use in the above “echo” command (Step 2)

The utilities can be found under `/usr/sbin/`, and are part of the srptools RPM that may be installed using the Mellanox OFED installation. Detailed information regarding the various options for these utilities are provided by their man pages.

Below, several usage scenarios for these utilities are presented.

ibsrpdm

ibsrpdm is using for the following tasks:

1. Detecting reachable targets
   a. To detect all targets reachable by the SRP initiator via the default umad device (/dev/umad0), execute the following command:

      `ibsrpdm`

      This command will output information on each SRP Target detected, in human-readable form.

      Sample output:

```
IO Unit Info:
     port LID:        0103
     port GID:        fe80000000000000002c90200402bd5
     change ID:       0002
     max controllers: 0x10
  controller[  1]
      GUID:      0002c90200402bd4
      vendor ID: 0002c9
      device ID: 005a44
      IO class : 0100
      ID:        LSI Storage Systems SRP Driver 200400a0b81146a1
      service entries: 1
      service[  0]: 200400a0b81146a1 / SRP.T10:200400A0B81146A1
```

b. To detect all the SRP Targets reachable by the SRP Initiator via another umad device, use the following command:

```
ibsrpdm -d <umad device>
```

2. Assistance in creating an SRP connection

a. To generate output suitable for utilization in the "echo" command of Section 8.2.2, add the '-c' option to ibsrpdm:

```
ibsrpdm -c
```

Sample output:

```
id_ext=200400A0B81146A1,ioc_guid=0002c90200402bd4,
dgid=fe80000000000000002c90200402bd5,pkey=ffff,
 service_id=200400a0b81146a1
```

b. To establish a connection with an SRP Target using the output from the '`libsrpdm -c`' example above, execute the following command:

```
echo -n id_ext=200400A0B81146A1,ioc_guid=0002c90200402bd4,
dgid=fe80000000000000002c90200402bd5,pkey=ffff,
service_id=200400a0b81146a1 > /sys/class/infiniband_srp/srp-mthca0-1/
add_target
```

The SRP connection should now be up; the newly created SCSI devices should appear in the listing obtained from the '`fdisk -l`' command.

srp_daemon

The srp_daemon utility is based on ibsrpdm and extends its functionality. In addition to the ibsrpdm functionality described above, srp_daemon can also

- Establish an SRP connection by itself (without the need to issue the "echo" command described in Section 8.2.2)

- Continue running in background, detecting new targets and establishing SRP connections with them (daemon mode)
- Discover reachable SRP Targets given an infiniband HCA name and port, rather than just by /dev/umad<N> where <N> is a digit
- Enable High Availability operation (together with Device-Mapper Multipath)
- Have a configuration file that determines the targets to connect to

1. `srp_daemon` commands equivalent to ibsrpdm:

```
"srp_daemon -a -o"    is equivalent to "ibsrpdm"
"srp_daemon -c -a -o" is equivalent to "ibsrpdm -c"
```

Note: These srp_daemon commands can behave differently than the equivalent ibsrpdm command when /etc/srp_daemon.conf is not empty.

2. `srp_daemon` extensions to `ibsrpdm`
   - To discover SRP Targets reachable from the HCA device <InfiniBand HCA name> and the port <port num>, (and to generate output suitable for 'echo',) you may execute:

```
host1# srp_daemon -c -a -o -i <InfiniBand HCA name> -p <port number>
```

Note: To obtain the list of InfiniBand HCA device names, you can either use the `ibstat` tool or run '`ls /sys/class/infiniband`'.

   - To both discover the SRP Targets and establish connections with them, just add the -e option to the above command.
   - Executing srp_daemon over a port without the -a option will only display the reachable targets via the port and to which the initiator is not connected. If executing with the -e option it is better to omit -a.
   - It is recommended to use the -n option. This option adds the initiator_ext to the connecting string. (See Section 8.2.5 for more details).
   - srp_daemon has a configuration file that can be set, where the default is /etc/srp_daemon.conf. Use the -f to supply a different configuration file that configures the targets srp_daemon is allowed to connect to. The configuration file can also be used to set values for additional parameters (e.g., max_cmd_per_lun, max_sect).
   - A continuous background (daemon) operation, providing an automatic ongoing detection and connection capability. See Section 8.2.4.

8.2.4 Automatic Discovery and Connection to Targets

- Make sure that the ib_srp module is loaded, the SRP Initiator can reach an SRP Target, and that an SM is running.
- To connect to all the existing Targets in the fabric, run "**`srp_daemon -e -o`**". This utility will scan the fabric once, connect to every Target it detects, and then exit.

Note: srp_daemon will follow the configuration it finds in /etc/srp_daemon.conf. Thus, it will ignore a target that is disallowed in the configuration file.

- To connect to all the existing Targets in the fabric and to connect to new targets that will join the fabric, execute srp_daemon -e. This utility continues to execute until it is either killed by the user or encounters connection errors (such as no SM in the fabric).
- To execute SRP daemon as a daemon you may run "**run_srp_daemon**" (found under /usr/sbin/), providing it with the same options used for running srp_daemon.

  Note: Make sure only one instance of run_srp_daemon runs per port.

- To execute SRP daemon as a daemon on all the ports, run "**srp_daemon.sh**" (found under /usr/sbin/). srp_daemon.sh sends its log to /var/log/srp_daemon.log.
- It is possible to configure this script to execute automatically when the InfiniBand driver starts by changing the value of SRPHA_ENABLE in /etc/infiniband/openib.conf to "yes". However, this option also enables SRP High Availability that has some more features – see Section 8.2.6).

  Note: For the changes in openib.conf to take effect, run:
  /etc/init.d/openibd restart

8.2.5 Multiple Connections from Initiator IB Port to the Target

Some system configurations may need multiple SRP connections from the SRP Initiator to the same SRP Target: to the same Target IB port, or to different IB ports on the same Target HCA.

In case of a single Target IB port, i.e., SRP connections use the same path, the configuration is enabled using a different initiator_ext value for each SRP connection. The initiator_ext value is a 16-hexadecimal-digit value specified in the connection command.

Also in case of two physical connections (i.e., network paths) from a single initiator IB port to two different IB ports on the same Target HCA, there is need for a different initiator_ext value on each path. The conventions is to use the Target port GUID as the initiator_ext value for the relevant path.

If you use srp_daemon with -n flag, it automatically assigns initiator_ext values according to this convention. For example:

```
id_ext=200500A0B81146A1,ioc_guid=0002c90200402bec,\
dgid=fe8000000000000002c90200402bed,pkey=ffff,\
service_id=200500a0b81146a1,initiator_ext=ed2b400002c90200
```

Notes:

1. It is recommended to use the -n flag for all srp_daemon invocations.
2. ibsrpdm does not have a corresponding option.
3. srp_daemon.sh always uses the -n option (whether invoked manually by the user, or automatically at startup by setting SRPHA_ENABLE to yes).

8.2.6 High Availability (HA)

Overview

High Availability works using the Device-Mapper (DM) multipath and the SRP daemon. Each initiator is connected to the same target from several ports/HCAs. The DM multipath is responsible for joining together different paths to the same target and for fail-over between paths when one of them goes offline. Multipath will be executed on newly joined SCSI devices.

Each initiator should execute several instances of the SRP daemon, one for each port. At startup, each SRP daemon detects the SRP Targets in the fabric and sends requests to the ib_srp module to connect to each of them. These SRP daemons also detect targets that subsequently join the fabric, and send the ib_srp module requests to connect to them as well.

Operation

When a path (from port1) to a target fails, the ib_srp module starts an error recovery process. If this process gets to the reset_host stage and there is no path to the target from this port, ib_srp will remove this scsi_host. After the scsi_host is removed, multipath switches to another path to this target (from another port/HCA).

When the failed path recovers, it will be detected by the SRP daemon. The SRP daemon will then request ib_srp to connect to this target. Once the connection is up, there will be a new scsi_host for this target. Multipath will be executed on the devices of this host, returning to the original state (prior to the failed path).

Prerequisites

Installation for RHEL4/5: (Execute once)

- Verify that the standard device-mapper-multipath rpm is installed. If not, install it from the RHEL distribution.

Installation for SLES10: (Execute once)

- Verify that multipath is installed. If not, take it from the installation (you may use ‘`yast`’).
- Update udev: (Execute once - for manual activation of High Availability only)
- Add a file to /etc/udev/rules.d/ (you can call it 91-srp.rules). This file should have one line:

```
ACTION=="add", KERNEL=="sd*[!0-9]", RUN+="/sbin/multipath %M:%m"
```

Note: When SRPHA_ENABLE is set to "yes" (see Automatic Activation of High Availability below), this file is created upon each boot of the driver and is deleted when the driver is unloaded.

Manual Activation of High Availability

Initialization: (Execute after each boot of the driver)

1. Execute modprobe dm-multipath
2. Execute modprobe ib-srp
3. Make sure you have created file /etc/udev/rules.d/91-srp.rules as described above.

4. Execute for each port and each HCA:

```
srp_daemon -c -e -R 300 -i <InfiniBand HCA name> -p <port number>
```

   This step can be performed by executing srp_daemon.sh, which sends its log to /var/log/srp_daemon.log.

Now it is possible to access the SRP LUNs on `/dev/mapper/`.

Note: It is possible for regular (non-SRP) LUNs to also be present; the SRP LUNs may be identified by their names. You can configure the `/etc/multipath.conf` file to change multipath behavior.

Note: It is also possible that the SRP LUNs will not appear under `/dev/mapper/`. This can occur if the SRP LUNs are in the black-list of multipath. Edit the 'blacklist' section in `/etc/multipath.conf` and make sure the SRP LUNs are not black-listed.

Automatic Activation of High Availability

- Set the value of SRPHA_ENABLE in `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf` to "yes".

  Note: For the changes in `openib.conf` to take effect, run:
  `/etc/init.d/openibd restart`

- From the next loading of the driver it will be possible to access the SRP LUNs on /dev/mapper/

  Note: It is possible that regular (not SRP) LUNs may also be present; the SRP LUNs may be identified by their name.

- It is possible to see the output of the SRP daemon in /var/log/srp_daemon.log

8.2.7 Shutting Down SRP

SRP can be shutdown by using "rmmod ib_srp", or by stopping the OFED driver ("`/etc/init.d/openibd stop`"), or as a by-product of a complete system shutdown.

Prior to shutting down SRP, remove all references to it. The actions you need to take depend on the way SRP was loaded. There are three cases:

1. Without High Availability

   When working without High Availability, you should unmount the SRP partitions that were mounted prior to shutting down SRP.

2. After Manual Activation of High Availability

If you manually activated SRP High Availability, perform the following steps:

a. Unmount all SRP partitions that were mounted.

b. Kill the SRP daemon instances.

c. Make sure there are no multipath instances running. If there are multiple instances, wait for them to end or kill them.

d. Run: `multipath -F`

5. After Automatic Activation of High Availability

   If SRP High Availability was automatically activated, SRP shutdown must be part of the driver shutdown ("/etc/init.d/openibd stop") which performs Steps 2-4 of case b above. However, you still have to unmount all SRP partitions that were mounted before driver shutdown.

9 NFSoRDMA

9.1 Overview

NFS over RDMA in Mellanox OFED is a binding of NFS v2, v3, v4 on top of the InfiniBand RDMA transport and iWARP.

9.2 Installation

These instructions are a step by step guide to building a machine for use with NFS/RDMA.

- Install an RDMA device

  Any device supported by the drivers in drivers/infiniband/hw is acceptable. Testing has been performed using several Mellanox-based IB cards, the Ammasso AMS1100 iWARP adapter, and the Chelsio cxgb3 iWARP adapter.

- Install a Linux distribution and tools

  The first kernel release to contain both the NFS/RDMA client and server was Linux 2.6.25 Therefore, a distribution compatible with this and subsequent Linux kernel release should be installed. The procedures described in this document have been tested with distributions from Red Hat's Fedora Project (http://fedora.redhat.com/).

- Install nfs-utils-1.1.2 or greater on the client

  An NFS/RDMA mount point can be obtained by using the mount.nfs command in nfs-utils-1.1.2 or greater (nfs-utils-1.1.1 was the first nfs-utils version with support for NFS/RDMA mounts, but for various reasons we recommend using nfs-utils-1.1.2 or greater). To see which version of mount.nfs you are using, type:

  ```
  $ /sbin/mount.nfs -V
  ```

  If the version is less than 1.1.2 or the command does not exist, you should install the latest version of nfs-utils.

  - Download the latest package from: http://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/utils/nfs

  - Uncompress the package and follow the installation instructions.

  If you will not need the idmapper and gssd executables (you do not need these to create an NFS/RDMA enabled mount command), the installation process can be simplified by disabling these features when running configure:

  ```
  $ ./configure --disable-gss --disable-nfsv4
  ```

  To build nfs-utils you will need the tcp_wrappers package installed. For more information on this see the package's README and INSTALL files.

  After building the nfs-utils package, there will be a mount.nfs binary in the utils/mount directory. This binary can be used to initiate NFS v2, v3, or v4 mounts. To initiate a v4 mount, the binary must be called mount.nfs4. The standard technique is to create a symlink called mount.nfs4 to mount.nfs.

  This mount.nfs binary should be installed at /sbin/mount.nfs as follows:

  ```
  $ sudo cp utils/mount/mount.nfs /sbin/mount.nfs
  ```

In this location, mount.nfs will be invoked automatically for NFS mounts by the system mount command.

Note: mount.nfs and therefore nfs-utils-1.1.2 or greater is only needed on the NFS client machine. You do not need this specific version of nfs-utils on the server. Furthermore, only the mount.nfs command from nfs-utils-1.1.2 is needed on the client.

- Install a Linux kernel with NFS/RDMA

  The NFS/RDMA client and server are both included in the mainline Linux kernel version 2.6.25 and later. This and other versions of the 2.6 Linux kernel can be found at:

  ftp://ftp.kernel.org/pub/linux/kernel/v2.6/.

  Download the sources and place them in an appropriate location.

- Configure the RDMA stack

  Make sure your kernel configuration has RDMA support enabled. Under Device Drivers -> InfiniBand support, update the kernel configuration to enable InfiniBand support [NOTE: the option name is misleading. Enabling InfiniBand support is required for all RDMA devices (IB, iWARP, etc.)].

  Enable the appropriate IB HCA support (mlx4, mthca, ehca, ipath, etc.) or iWARP adapter support (amso, cxgb3, etc.).

  If you are using InfiniBand, be sure to enable IP-over-InfiniBand support.

- Configure the NFS client and server

  Your kernel configuration must also have NFS file system support and/or NFS server support enabled. These and other NFS related configuration options can be found under File Systems -> Network File Systems.

- Build, install, reboot

  The NFS/RDMA code will be enabled automatically if NFS and RDMA are turned on. The NFS/RDMA client and server are configured via the hidden SUNRPC_XPRT_RDMA config option that depends on SUNRPC and INFINIBAND. The value of SUNRPC_XPRT_RDMA will be:

  - N if either SUNRPC or INFINIBAND are N, in this case the NFS/RDMA client and server will not be built

  - M if both SUNRPC and INFINIBAND are on (M or Y) and at least one is M, in this case the NFS/RDMA client and server will be built as modules

  - Y if both SUNRPC and INFINIBAND are Y, in this case the NFS/RDMA client and server will be built into the kernel

  Therefore, if you have followed the steps above and turned no NFS and RDMA, the NFS/RDMA client and server will be built.

  Build a new kernel, install it, boot it.

9.3 Check RDMA and NFS Setup

Before configuring the NFS/RDMA software, it is a good idea to test your new kernel to ensure that the kernel is working correctly. In particular, it is a good idea to verify that the RDMA stack is functioning as expected and standard NFS over TCP/IP and/or UDP/IP is working properly.

- Check RDMA Setup

  If you built the RDMA components as modules, load them at this time. For example, if you are using a Mellanox InfiniHost® / InfiniHost® III Ex / InfiniHost® III Lx card:

  ```
  $ modprobe ib_mthca
  $ modprobe ib_ipoib
  ```

  If you are using InfiniBand, make sure there is a Subnet Manager (SM) running on the network. If your IB switch has an embedded SM, you can use it. Otherwise, you will need to run an SM, such as OpenSM, on one of your end nodes.

  If an SM is running on your network, you should see the following:

  ```
  $ cat /sys/class/infiniband/driverX/ports/1/state
  4: ACTIVE
  ```

  where driverX is mthca0, ipath5, ehca3, etc.

  To further test the InfiniBand software stack, use IPoIB (this assumes you have two IB hosts named host1 and host2):

  ```
  host1$ ifconfig ib0 a.b.c.x
  host2$ ifconfig ib0 a.b.c.y
  host1$ ping a.b.c.y
  host2$ ping a.b.c.x
  ```

  For other device types, follow the appropriate procedures.

- Check NFS Setup

  For the NFS components enabled above (client and/or server), test their functionality over standard Ethernet using TCP/IP or UDP/IP.

9.4 NFS/RDMA Setup

We recommend that you use two machines, one to act as the client and one to act as the server.

One time configuration:

- On the server system, configure the /etc/exports file and start the NFS/RDMA server.

  Exports entries with the following formats have been tested:

  ```
  /vol0   192.168.0.47(fsid=0,rw,async,insecure,no_root_squash)
  /vol0   192.168.0.0/255.255.255.0(fsid=0,rw,async,insecure,no_root_squash)
  ```

  The IP address(es) is(are) the client's IPoIB address for an InfiniBand HCA or the cleint's iWARP address(es) for an RNIC.

Note: The “insecure” option must be used because the NFS/RDMA client does not use a reserved port.

Each time a machine boots:

- Load and configure the RDMA drivers

  For InfiniBand using a Mellanox adapter:

  ```
  $ modprobe ib_mthca
  $ modprobe ib_ipoib
  $ ifconfig ib0 a.b.c.d
  ```

  Note: Use unique addresses for the client and server

- Start the NFS server

  If the NFS/RDMA server was built as a module (CONFIG_SUNRPC_XPRT_RDMA=m in kernel config), load the RDMA transport module:

  ```
  $ modprobe svcrdma
  ```

  Regardless of how the server was built (module or built-in), start the server:

  ```
  $ /etc/init.d/nfs start
  ```

  or

  ```
  $ service nfs start
  ```

  Instruct the server to listen on the RDMA transport:

  ```
  $ echo rdma 20049 > /proc/fs/nfsd/portlist
  ```

- On the client system:

  If the NFS/RDMA client was built as a module (CONFIG_SUNRPC_XPRT_RDMA=m in kernel config), load the RDMA client module:

  ```
  $ modprobe xprtrdma.ko
  ```

  Regardless of how the client was built (module or built-in), use this command to mount the NFS/RDMA server:

  ```
  $ mount -o rdma,port=20049 <IPoIB-server-name-or-address>:/<export> /mnt
  ```

  To verify that the mount is using RDMA, run "cat /proc/mounts" and check the “proto” field for the given mount.

  Congratulations! You're using NFS/RDMA!

10 MPI

10.1 Overview

Mellanox OFED for Linux includes the following MPI implementations over InfiniBand and RoCE:

- Open MPI – an open source MPI-2 implementation by the Open MPI Project
- OSU MVAPICH – an MPI-1 implementation by Ohio State University

These MPI implementations, along with MPI benchmark tests such as OSU BW/LAT, Intel MPI Benchmark, and Presta, are installed on your machine as part of the Mellanox OFED for Linux installation. Table 6 lists some useful MPI links.

Table 6 - Useful MPI Links

MPI Standard	http://www-unix.mcs.anl.gov/mpi
Open MPI	http://www.open-mpi.org
MVAPICH MPI	http://mvapich.cse.ohio-state.edu/
MPI Forum	http://www.mpi-forum.org

This chapter includes the following sections:

- "Prerequisites for Running MPI" (page 97)
- "MPI Selector - Which MPI Runs" (page 99)
- "Compiling MPI Applications" (page 99)
- "OSU MVAPICH Performance" (page 100)
- "Open MPI Performance" (page 103)

10.2 Prerequisites for Running MPI

For launching multiple MPI processes on multiple remote machines, the MPI standard provides a launcher program that requires automatic login (i.e., password-less) onto the remote machines. SSH (Secure Shell) is both a computer program and a network protocol that can be used for logging and running commands on remote computers and/or servers.

10.2.1 SSH Configuration

The following steps describe how to configure password-less access over SSH:

Step 1. Generate an ssh key on the initiator machine (host1).

```
host1$ ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

```
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/<username>/.ssh/id_rsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/<username>/.ssh/id_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /home/<username>/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
38:1b:29:df:4f:08:00:4a:0e:50:0f:05:44:e7:9f:05 <username>@host1
```

Step 2. Check that the public and private keys have been generated.

```
host1$ cd /home/<username>/.ssh/
host1$ ls
host1$ ls -la
total 40
drwx------  2 root root 4096 Mar  5 04:57 .
drwxr-x--- 13 root root 4096 Mar  4 18:27 ..
-rw-------  1 root root 1675 Mar  5 04:57 id_rsa
-rw-r--r--  1 root root  404 Mar  5 04:57 id_rsa.pub
```

Step 3. Check the public key.

```
host1$ cat id_rsa.pub
ssh-rsa
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAQEA1zVY8VBHQh9okZN7OA1ibUQ74RXm4zHeczyVxpYHaDPyDmqezbYMKrCIVzd10b
H+ZkC0rpLYviU0oUHd3fvNTfMs0gcGg08PysUf+12FyYjira2P1xyg6mkHLGGqVutfEMmABZ3wNCUg6J2X3G/uiuS-
WXeubZmbXcMrP/
w4IWByfH8ajwo6A5WioNbFZElbYeeNfPZf4UNcgMOAMWp64sL58tkt32F+RGmyLXQWZL27Synsn6dHpxMqBorXNC0Z
Be4kTnUqm63nQ2z1qVMdL9FrCma1xIOu9+SQJAjwONevaMzFKEHe7YHg6YrNfXunfdbEurzB524TpPcrodZlfCQ==
<username>@host1
```

Step 4. Now you need to add the public key to the `authorized_keys2` file on the *target* machine.

```
host1$ cat id_rsa.pub | xargs ssh host2 \
 "echo  >>/home/<username>/.ssh/authorized_keys2"
 <username>@host2's password:                // Enter password
 host1$
```

For a local machine, simply add the key to `authorized_keys2`.

```
host1$ cat id_rsa.pub >> authorized_keys2
```

Step 5. Test.

```
host1$ ssh  host2  uname
Linux
```

10.3 MPI Selector - Which MPI Runs

Mellanox OFED contains a simple mechanism for system administrators and end-users to select which MPI implementation they want to use. The MPI selector functionality is not specific to any MPI implementation; it can be used with any implementation that provides shell startup files that correctly set the environment for that MPI. The Mellanox OFED installer will automatically add MPI selector support for each MPI that it installs. Additional MPI's not known by the Mellanox OFED installer can be listed in the MPI selector; see the mpi-selector(1) man page for details.

Note that MPI selector only affects the default MPI environment for *future* shells. Specifically, if you use MPI selector to select MPI implementation ABC, this default selection will not take effect until you start a new shell (e.g., logout and login again). Other packages (such as environment modules) provide functionality that allows changing your environment to point to a new MPI implementation in the current shell. The MPI selector was not meant to duplicate or replace that functionality.

The MPI selector functionality can be invoked in one of two ways:

1. The mpi-selector-menu command.

   This command is a simple, menu-based program that allows the selection of the system-wide MPI (usually only settable by root) and a per-user MPI selection. It also shows what the current selections are. This command is recommended for all users.

2. The mpi-selector command.

   This command is a CLI-equivalent of the mpi-selector-menu, allowing for the same functionality as mpi-selector-menu but without the interactive menus and prompts. It is suitable for scripting.

10.4 Compiling MPI Applications

Note: A valid Fortran compiler must be present in order to build the MVAPICH MPI stack and tests.

The following compilers are supported by Mellanox OFED's MVAPICH and Open MPI packages: Gcc, Intel and PGI. The install script prompts the user to choose the compiler with which to install the MVAPICH and Open MPI RPMs. Note that more than one compiler can be selected simultaneously, if desired.

Compiling MVAPICH Applications

Please refer to http://mvapich.cse.ohio-state.edu/support/mvapich_user_guide.html.

To review the default configuration of the installation, check the default configuration file:

```
/usr/mpi/<compiler>/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/etc/mvapich.conf
```

Compiling Open MPI Applications

Please refer to http://www.open-mpi.org/faq/?category=mpi-apps.

10.5 OSU MVAPICH Performance

10.5.1 Requirements

- At least two nodes. Example: host1, host2
- Machine file: Includes the list of machines. Example:

```
host1$ cat /home/<username>/cluster
host1
host2
host1$
```

10.5.2 Bandwidth Test Performance

To run the OSU Bandwidth test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/bin/mpirun_rsh -np 2 \
-hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/tests/osu_benchmarks-<osu-ver>/osu_bw
# OSU MPI Bandwidth Test v3.0
# Size        Bandwidth (MB/s)
1                      4.62
2                      8.91
4                     17.70
8                     32.59
16                    60.13
32                   113.21
64                   194.22
128                  293.20
256                  549.43
512                  883.23
1024                1096.65
2048                1165.60
4096                1233.91
8192                1230.90
16384               1308.92
32768               1414.75
65536               1465.28
131072              1500.36
262144              1515.26
524288              1525.20
1048576             1527.63
2097152             1530.48
4194304             1537.50
```

10.5.3 Latency Test Performance

To run the OSU Latency test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/bin/mpirun_rsh -np 2 \
-hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/tests/osu_benchmarks-<osu-ver>/osu_latency
# OSU MPI Latency Test v3.0
# Size            Latency (us)
0                         1.20
1                         1.21
2                         1.21
4                         1.21
8                         1.23
16                        1.24
32                        1.33
64                        1.49
128                       2.66
256                       3.08
512                       3.61
1024                      4.82
2048                      6.09
4096                      8.62
8192                     13.59
16384                    18.12
32768                    28.81
65536                    50.38
131072                   93.70
262144                  178.77
524288                  349.31
1048576                 689.25
2097152                1371.04
4194304                2739.16
```

10.5.4 Intel MPI Benchmark

To run the Intel MPI Benchmark test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/bin/mpirun_rsh -np 2 \
-hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/tests/IMB-<IMB-ver>/IMB-MPI1
#---------------------------------------------------
#    Intel (R) MPI Benchmark Suite V3.0, MPI-1 part
#---------------------------------------------------
# Date                  : Sun Mar  2 19:56:42 2008
# Machine               : x86_64
# System                : Linux
```

```
# Release               : 2.6.16.21-0.8-smp
# Version               : #1 SMP Mon Jul 3 18:25:39 UTC 2006
# MPI Version           : 1.2
# MPI Thread Environment: MPI_THREAD_FUNNELED

#
# Minimum message length in bytes:   0
# Maximum message length in bytes:   4194304
#
# MPI_Datatype                   :   MPI_BYTE
# MPI_Datatype for reductions    :   MPI_FLOAT
# MPI_Op                         :   MPI_SUM
#
#

# List of Benchmarks to run:

# PingPong
# PingPing
# Sendrecv
# Exchange
# Allreduce
# Reduce
# Reduce_scatter
# Allgather
# Allgatherv
# Alltoall
# Alltoallv
# Bcast
# Barrier

#---------------------------------------------------
# Benchmarking PingPong
# #processes = 2
#---------------------------------------------------
       #bytes #repetitions      t[usec]   Mbytes/sec
            0         1000         1.25         0.00
            1         1000         1.24         0.77
            2         1000         1.25         1.52
            4         1000         1.23         3.09
            8         1000         1.26         6.07
           16         1000         1.29        11.83
           32         1000         1.36        22.51
```

```
        64         1000         1.52        40.25
       128         1000         2.67        45.74
       256         1000         3.03        80.48
       512         1000         3.64       134.22
      1024         1000         4.89       199.69
      2048         1000         6.30       309.85
      4096         1000         8.91       438.24
      8192         1000        14.07       555.20
     16384         1000        18.85       828.93
     32768         1000        30.47      1025.75
     65536          640        53.67      1164.57
    131072          320        99.78      1252.80
    262144          160       191.80      1303.44
    524288           80       373.92      1337.19
   1048576           40       742.31      1347.14
   2097152           20      1475.20      1355.75
   4194304           10      2956.95      1352.75

#-- OUTPUT TRUNCATED
```

10.6 Open MPI Performance

10.6.1 Requirements

- At least two nodes. Example: host1, host2
- Machine file: Includes the list of machines. Example:

```
host1$ cat /home/<username>/cluster
host1
host2
host1$
```

10.6.2 Important Note on RoCE Support

In order to run Open MPI over a RoCCE network, the following MCA parameter should be included in the run command:

```
--mca btl_openib_cpc_include rdmacm
```

10.6.3 Bandwidth Test Performance

To run the OSU Bandwidth test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/bin/mpirun -np 2 \
--mca mpi_leave_pinned 1 -hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/tests/osu_benchmarks-<osu-ver>/osu_bw
# OSU MPI Bandwidth Test v3.0
# Size        Bandwidth (MB/s)
```

```
1                         1.12
2                         2.24
4                         4.43
8                         8.96
16                       17.38
32                       34.69
64                       69.31
128                     121.29
256                     212.70
512                     326.50
1024                    461.78
2048                    597.85
4096                    543.06
8192                    829.64
16384                  1137.22
32768                  1386.08
65536                  1520.89
131072                 1622.73
262144                 1659.33
524288                 1679.36
1048576                1675.35
2097152                1668.89
4194304                1671.78
```

10.6.4 Latency Test Performance

To run the OSU Latency test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/bin/mpirun -np 2 \
--mca mpi_leave_pinned 1 -hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/tests/osu_benchmarks-<osu-ver>/osu_latency
# OSU MPI Latency Test v3.0
# Size            Latency (us)
0                         1.23
1                         1.37
2                         1.55
4                         1.54
8                         1.55
16                        1.58
32                        1.59
64                        1.59
128                       1.78
256                       2.05
512                       2.69
```

```
1024                        3.75
2048                        6.14
4096                       10.07
8192                       12.77
16384                      18.36
32768                      30.52
65536                      48.92
131072                     93.18
262144                    171.92
524288                    341.08
1048576                   737.97
2097152                  1729.27
4194304                  4226.58
```

10.6.5 Intel MPI Benchmark

To run the Intel MPI Benchmark test, enter:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/bin/mpirun -np 2 \
--mca mpi_leave_pinned 1 -hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
/usr/mpi/gcc/openmpi-<ompi-ver>/tests/IMB-<IMB-ver>/IMB-MPI1
#---------------------------------------------------
#    Intel (R) MPI Benchmark Suite V3.0, MPI-1 part
#---------------------------------------------------
# Date                  : Mon Mar 10 12:57:18 2008
# Machine               : x86_64
# System                : Linux
# Release               : 2.6.16.21-0.8-smp
# Version               : #1 SMP Mon Jul 3 18:25:39 UTC 2006
# MPI Version           : 2.0
# MPI Thread Environment: MPI_THREAD_SINGLE

# Minimum message length in bytes:   0
# Maximum message length in bytes:   4194304
#
# MPI_Datatype                   :   MPI_BYTE
# MPI_Datatype for reductions    :   MPI_FLOAT
# MPI_Op                         :   MPI_SUM
#

# List of Benchmarks to run:

# PingPong
# PingPing
# Sendrecv
# Exchange
# Allreduce
# Reduce
# Reduce_scatter
```

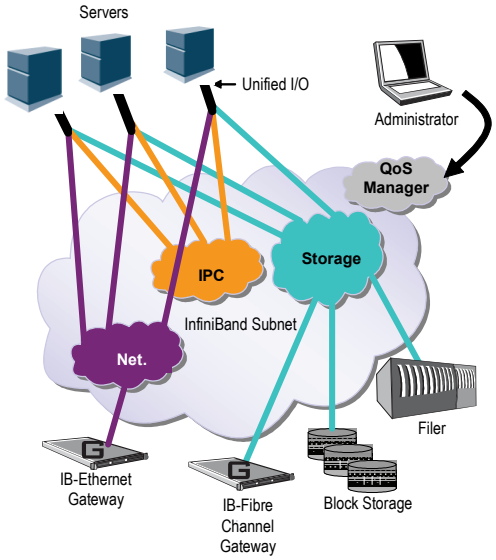
```
# Allgather
# Allgatherv
# Alltoall
# Alltoallv
# Bcast
# Barrier

#---------------------------------------------------
# Benchmarking PingPong
# #processes = 2
#---------------------------------------------------
       #bytes #repetitions      t[usec]   Mbytes/sec
            0         1000         1.47         0.00
            1         1000         1.57         0.61
            2         1000         1.56         1.22
            4         1000         1.53         2.49
            8         1000         1.55         4.92
           16         1000         1.60         9.52
           32         1000         1.62        18.86
           64         1000         1.61        37.90
          128         1000         1.80        67.65
          256         1000         2.05       119.26
          512         1000         2.67       183.08
         1024         1000         3.74       260.97
         2048         1000         6.15       317.84
         4096         1000        10.15       384.74
         8192         1000        12.75       612.84
        16384         1000        18.47       845.85
        32768         1000        30.84      1013.28
        65536          640        48.88      1278.77
       131072          320        86.36      1447.43
       262144          160       163.91      1525.26
       524288           80       335.82      1488.90
      1048576           40       726.25      1376.94
      2097152           20      1786.35      1119.60
      4194304           10      4253.59       940.38

#-- OUTPUT TRUNCATED
```

11 Quality of Service

11.1 Overview

Quality of Service (QoS) requirements stem from the realization of I/O consolidation over an IB network. As multiple applications and ULPs share the same fabric, a means is needed to control their use of network resources.

Figure 2: I/O Consolidation Over InfiniBand



QoS over Mellanox OFED for Linux is discussed in Chapter 12, "OpenSM – Subnet Manager".

The basic need is to differentiate the service levels provided to different traffic flows, such that a policy can be enforced and can control each flow utilization of fabric resources.

The InfiniBand Architecture Specification defines several hardware features and management interfaces for supporting QoS:

- Up to 15 Virtual Lanes (VL) carry traffic in a non-blocking manner
- Arbitration between traffic of different VLs is performed by a two-priority-level weighted round robin arbiter. The arbiter is programmable with a sequence of (VL, weight) pairs and a maximal number of high priority credits to be processed before low priority is served
- Packets carry class of service marking in the range 0 to 15 in their header SL field
- Each switch can map the incoming packet by its SL to a particular output VL, based on a programmable table VL=SL-to-VL-MAP(in-port, out-port, SL)
- The Subnet Administrator controls the parameters of each communication flow by providing them as a response to Path Record (PR) or MultiPathRecord (MPR) queries

DiffServ architecture (IETF RFC 2474 & 2475) is widely used in highly dynamic fabrics. The following subsections provide the functional definition of the various software elements that enable a DiffServ-like architecture over the Mellanox OFED software stack.

11.2 QoS Architecture

QoS functionality is split between the SM/SA, CMA and the various ULPs. We take the "chronology approach" to describe how the overall system works.

1. The network manager (human) provides a set of rules (policy) that define how the network is being configured and how its resources are split to different QoS-Levels. The policy also define how to decide which QoS-Level each application or ULP or service use.
2. The SM analyzes the provided policy to see if it is realizable and performs the necessary fabric setup. Part of this policy defines the default QoS-Level of each partition. The SA is enhanced to match the requested Source, Destination, QoS-Class, Service-ID, PKey against the policy, so clients (ULPs, programs) can obtain a policy enforced QoS. The SM may also set up partitions with appropriate IPoIB broadcast group. This broadcast group carries its QoS attributes: SL, MTU, RATE, and Packet Lifetime.
3. IPoIB is being setup. IPoIB uses the SL, MTU, RATE and Packet Lifetime available on the multicast group which forms the broadcast group of this partition.
4. MPI which provides non IB based connection management should be configured to run using hard coded SLs. It uses these SLs for every QP being opened.
5. ULPs that use CM interface (like SRP) have their own pre-assigned Service-ID and use it while obtaining PathRecord/MultiPathRecord (PR/MPR) for establishing connections. The SA receiving the PR/MPR matches it against the policy and returns the appropriate PR/MPR including SL, MTU, RATE and Lifetime.
6. ULPs and programs (e.g. SDP) use CMA to establish RC connection provide the CMA the target IP and port number. ULPs might also provide QoS-Class. The CMA then creates Service-ID for the ULP and passes this ID and optional QoS-Class in the PR/MPR request. The resulting PR/MPR is used for configuring the connection QP.

PathRecord and MultiPathRecord Enhancement for QoS:

As mentioned above, the PathRecord and MultiPathRecord attributes are enhanced to carry the Service-ID which is a 64bit value. A new field QoS-Class is also provided.

A new capability bit describes the SM QoS support in the SA class port info. This approach provides an easy migration path for existing access layer and ULPs by not introducing new set of PR/MPR attributes.

11.3 Supported Policy

The QoS policy, which is specified in a stand-alone file, is divided into the following four subsections:

I. Port Group

A set of CAs, Routers or Switches that share the same settings. A port group might be a partition defined by the partition manager policy, list of GUIDs, or list of port names based on NodeDescription.

II. Fabric Setup

Defines how the SL2VL and VLArb tables should be setup.

Note: In OFED this part of the policy is ignored. SL2VL and VLArb tables should be configured in the OpenSM options file (opensm.opts).

III. QoS-Levels Definition

This section defines the possible sets of parameters for QoS that a client might be mapped to. Each set holds SL and optionally: Max MTU, Max Rate, Packet Lifetime and Path Bits.

Note: Path Bits are not implemented in OFED.

IV. Matching Rules

A list of rules that match an incoming PR/MPR request to a QoS-Level. The rules are processed in order such as the first match is applied. Each rule is built out of a set of match expressions which should all match for the rule to apply. The matching expressions are defined for the following fields:

- SRC and DST to lists of port groups
- Service-ID to a list of Service-ID values or ranges
- QoS-Class to a list of QoS-Class values or ranges

11.4 CMA features

The CMA interface supports Service-ID through the notion of port space as a prefix to the port number, which is part of the sockaddr provided to rdma_resolve_add(). The CMA also allows the ULP (like SDP) to propagate a request for a specific QoS-Class. The CMA uses the provided QoS-Class and Service-ID in the sent PR/MPR.

11.5 IPoIB

IPoIB queries the SA for its broadcast group information and uses the SL, MTU, RATE and Packet Lifetime available on the multicast group which forms this broadcast group.

11.6 SDP

SDP uses CMA for building its connections. The Service-ID for SDP is 0x000000000001PPPP, where PPPP are 4 hexadecimal digits holding the remote TCP/IP Port Number to connect to.

11.7 RDS

RDS uses CMA and thus it is very close to SDP. The Service-ID for RDS is 0x000000000106PPPP, where PPPP are 4 hexadecimal digits holding the TCP/IP Port Number that the protocol connects to.

The default port number for RDS is 0x48CA, which makes a default Service-ID 0x00000000010648CA.

11.8 SRP

The current SRP implementation uses its own CM callbacks (not CMA). So SRP fills in the Service-ID in the PR/MPR by itself and use that information in setting up the QP.

SRP Service-ID is defined by the SRP target I/O Controller (it also complies with IBTA Service-ID rules). The Service-ID is reported by the I/O Controller in the ServiceEntries DMA attribute and should be used in the PR/MPR if the SA reports its ability to handle QoS PR/MPRs.

11.9 OpenSM Features

The QoS related functionality that is provided by OpenSM—the Subnet Manager described in Chapter 12—can be split into two main parts:

I. Fabric Setup

During fabric initialization, the Subnet Manager parses the policy and apply its settings to the discovered fabric elements.

II. PR/MPR Query Handling

OpenSM enforces the provided policy on client request. The overall flow for such requests is: first the request is matched against the defined match rules such that the target QoS-Level definition is found. Given the QoS-Level a path(s) search is performed with the given restrictions imposed by that level.

Note: QoS in OpenSM is described in detail in Chapter 12.

12 OpenSM – Subnet Manager

12.1 Overview

OpenSM is an InfiniBand compliant Subnet Manager (SM). It is provided as a fixed flow executable called *opensm*, accompanied by a testing application called *osmtest*. OpenSM implements an InfiniBand compliant SM according to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification chapters: Management Model (13), Subnet Management (14), and Subnet Administration (15).

12.2 opensm Description

opensm is an InfiniBand compliant Subnet Manager and Subnet Administrator that runs on top of the Mellanox OFED stack. **opensm** performs the InfiniBand specification's required tasks for initializing InfiniBand hardware. One SM must be running for each InfiniBand subnet.

opensm also provides an experimental version of a performance manager.

opensm defaults were designed to meet the common case usage on clusters with up to a few hundred nodes. Thus, in this default mode, **opensm** will scan the IB fabric, initialize it, and sweep occasionally for changes.

opensm attaches to a specific IB port on the local machine and configures only the fabric connected to it. (If the local machine has other IB ports, **opensm** will ignore the fabrics connected to those other ports). If no port is specified, **opensm** will select the first "best" available port. **opensm** can also present the available ports and prompt for a port number to attach to.

By default, the **opensm** run is logged to two files: `/var/log/messages` and `/var/log/opensm.log`. The first file will register only general major events, whereas the second file will include details of reported errors. All errors reported in this second file should be treated as indicators of IB fabric health issues. (Note that when a fatal and non-recoverable error occurs, **opensm** will exit.) Both log files should include the message "SUBNET UP" if **opensm** was able to setup the subnet correctly.

12.2.1 opensm Syntax

```
opensm [OPTIONS]
```

where OPTIONS are:

```
--version            Prints OpenSM version and exits

-F, --config <config file>
                     The name of the OpenSM config file. If not specified, /etc/
                     opensm/opensm.conf will be used (if it exists).
```

-c, --create-config <file name>

OpenSM will dump its configuration to the specified file and exit. This is one way to generate an OpenSM configuration file template.

-g, --guid <GUID in hexadecimal>

This option specifies the local port GUID value with which OpenSM should bind. OpenSM may be bound to 1 port at a time. If the GUID given is 0, OpenSM displays a list of possible port GUIDs and waits for user input. Without -g, OpenSM tries to use the default port.

-l, --lmc <LMC value>

This option specifies the subnet's LMC value. The number of LIDs assigned to each port is 2^LMC. The LMC value must be in the range 0-7. LMC values > 0 allow multiple paths between ports. LMC values > 0 should only be used if the subnet topology actually provides multiple paths between ports (i.e., multiple interconnects between switches). Without -l OpenSM defaults to LMC = 0, which allows one path between any two ports.

-p, --priority <priority value>

This option specifies the SMA’s priority. This will affect the handover cases, where the master is chosen by priority and GUID. Range is 0 (default and lowest priority) to 15 (highest).

-smkey <SM_Key_value>

This option specifies the SMA’s SM_Key (64 bits). This will affect SM authentication. Note that OpenSM version 3.2.1 and below used 1 as the default value in a host byte order; now it is fixed but you may need this option to interoperate with an old OpenSM running on a little endian machine.

-r, --reassign_lids

This option causes OpenSM to reassign LIDs to all end nodes. Specifying -r on a running subnet may disrupt subnet traffic. Without -r, OpenSM attempts to preserve existing LID assignments resolving multiple use of same LID.

-R, --routing_engine <Routing engine names>

This option chooses routing engine(s) to use instead of Min Hop algorithm (default). Multiple routing engines can be specified separated by commas so that specific ordering of routing algorithms will be tried if earlier routing engines fail. Supported engines: minhop, updn, file, ftree, lash, dor

```
--do_mesh_analysis
                    This option enables additional analysis for the lash rout-
                    ing engine to precondition switch port assignments in regu-
                    lar cartesian meshes which may reduce the number of SLs
                    required to give a deadlock free routing

--lash_start_vl <vl number>
                    Sets the starting VL to use for the lash routing algorithm.
                    Defaults to 0.

--sm_sl <sl number>
                    Sets the SL to use to communicate with the SM/SA. Defaults
                    to 0.

-z, --connect_roots
                    This option enforces routing engines (up/down and fat-tree)
                    to make connectivity between root switches and in this way
                    be IBA compliant. In many cases, this can violate "pure"
                    deadlock free algorithm, so use it carefully.

-A, --ucast_cache
                    This option enables unicast routing cache and prevents
                    routing recalculation  (which  is a heavy task in a large
                    cluster) when there was no topology change detected during
                    the  heavy  sweep, or when the topology change does not
                    require new routing calculation, e.g. when one  or  more
                    CAs/RTRs/leaf  switches  going down,  or  one  or  more of
                    these nodes coming back after being down.  A very common
                    case that is handled by the unicast  routing  cache is host
                    reboot, which otherwise would cause two full routing recal-
                    culations: one when the host goes  down,  and  the other
                    when the host comes back online.

-M, --lid_matrix_file <file name>
                    This option specifies the name of the lid matrix dump file
                    from where switch lid matrices (min hops tables will be
                    loaded.

-U, --lfts_file <file name>
                    This  option  specifies  the  name  of the LFTs file from
                    where switch forwarding tables will be loaded.

-S, --sadb_file <file name>
                    This option specifies the name of the  SA  DB  dump  file
                    from where SA database will be loaded.

-a, --root_guid_file <file name>
                    Set  the  root  nodes for the Up/Down or Fat-Tree routing
                    algorithm to the guids provided in the given file (one to a
                    line).
```

-u, --cn_guid_file <file name>

Set the compute nodes for the Fat-Tree routing algorithm to the guids provided in the given file (one to a line).

-G, --io_guid_file <path to file>

Set the I/O nodes for the Fat-Tree routing algorithm to the guids provided in the given file (one to a line)

--max_reverse_hops, -H <hop_count>

Set the max number of hops the wrong way around an I/O node is allowed to do (connectivity for I/O nodes on top switches)

-m, --ids_guid_file <file name>

Name of the map file with set of the IDs which will be used by Up/Down routing algorithm instead of node GUIDs (format: <guid> <id> per line).

-X, --guid_routing_order_file <file name>

Set the order port guids will be routed for the MinHop and Up/Down routing algorithms to the guids provided in the given file (one to a line).

-o, --once This option causes OpenSM to configure the subnet once, then exit. Ports remain in the ACTIVE state.

-s, --sweep <interval value>

This option specifies the number of seconds between subnet sweeps. Specifying -s 0 disables sweeping. Without -s, OpenSM defaults to a sweep interval of 10 seconds.

-t, --timeout <value>

This option specifies the time in milliseconds used for transaction timeouts. Specifying -t 0 disables timeouts. Without -t, OpenSM defaults to a timeout value of 200 milliseconds.

--retries <number>

This option specifies the number of retries used for transactions. Without --retries, OpenSM defaults to 3 retries for transactions.

-maxsmps <number>

This option specifies the number of VL15 SMP MADs allowed on the wire at any one time. Specifying -maxsmps 0 allows unlimited outstanding SMPs. Without -maxsmps, OpenSM defaults to a maximum of 4 outstanding SMPs.

-console [off | local]

This option activates the OpenSM console (default off).

-i, -ignore-guids <equalize-ignore-guids-file>

This option provides the means to define a set of ports (by node guid and port number) that will be ignored by the link load equalization algorithm.

--hop_weights_file, -w <path to file>

This option provides the means to define a weighting factor per port for customizing the least weight hops for the routing.

-x, --honor_guid2lid

This option forces OpenSM to honor the guid2lid file, when it comes out of Standby state, if such file exists under OSM_CACHE_DIR, and is valid. By default, this is FALSE.

-f, --log_file <file name>

This option defines the log to be the given file. By default, the log goes to /var/log/opensm.log. For the log to go to standard output use -f stdout.

-L, --log_limit <size in MB>

This option defines maximal log file size in MB. When specified the log file will be truncated upon reaching this limit.

-e, --erase_log_file

This option will cause deletion of the log file (if it previously exists). By default, the log file is accumulative.

-P, --Pconfig <partition config file>

This option defines the optional partition configuration file. The default name is /etc/opensm/partitions.conf.

-N, --no_part_enforce

This option disables partition enforcement on switch external ports.

--ar

This option enables Adaptive Routing Manager in OpenSM.

--ar_config_file <path to file>

This option specifies the optional Adaptive Routing config file. The default name is /etc/opensm/osm-ar.conf

-Q, --qos This option enables QoS setup. It is disabled by default.

-Y, --qos_policy_file <file name>

This option defines the optional QoS policy file. The default name is /etc/opensm/qos-policy.conf.

-y, --stay_on_fatal

This option will cause SM not to exit on fatal initialization issues: if SM discovers duplicated guids or a 12x link with lane reversal badly configured. By default, the SM will exit on these errors.

-B, --daemon

Run in daemon mode - OpenSM will run in the background.

-I, --inactive Start SM in inactive rather than init SM state. This option can be used in conjunction with the perfmgr so as to run a standalone performance manager without SM/SA. However, this is NOT currently implemented in the performance manager.

--prefix_routes_file <file name>

Prefix routes control how the SA responds to path record queries for off-subnet DGIDs. By default, the SA fails such queries. The PREFIX ROUTES section below describes the format of the configuration file. The default path is /etc/opensm/prefix-routes.conf.

--consolidate_ipv6_snm_req

Consolidate IPv6 Solicited Node Multicast group join requests into one multicast group per MGID PKey.

-v, --verbose This option increases the log verbosity level. The -v option may be specified multiple times to further increase the verbosity level. See the -D option for more information about log verbosity.

-V This option sets the maximum verbosity level and forces log flushing. The -V option is equivalent to ´-D 0xFF -d 2´. See the -D option for more information about log verbosity.

-D This option sets the log verbosity level. A flags field must follow the -D option. A bit set/clear in the flags enables/disables a specific log level as follows:

```
                        BIT    LOG LEVEL ENABLED
                        ----   -----------------
                        0x01   ERROR (error messages)
                        0x02   INFO (basic messages, low volume)
                        0x04   VERBOSE (interesting stuff, moderate volume)
                        0x08   DEBUG (diagnostic, high volume)
                        0x10   FUNCS (function entry/exit, very high volume)
                        0x20   FRAMES (dumps all SMP and GMP frames)
                        0x40   ROUTING (dump FDB routing information)
                        0x80   currently unused

                        Without  -D, OpenSM defaults to ERROR + INFO (0x3). Speci-
                        fying '-D 0' disables all messages.  Specifying '-D 0xFF'
                        enables all messages (see -V). High verbosity levels may
                        require increasing the transaction timeout with the -t
                        option.

-d, --debug             This option specifies a debug option. These options are not
                        normally needed. The number following -d selects the debug
                        option to enable as follows:
                        OPT   Description
                        ---   -----------------
                        -d0   Ignore other SM nodes
                        -d1   Force single threaded dispatching
                        -d2   Force log flushing after each log message
                        -d3   Disable multicast support

-h, --help              Display this usage info then exit

-?                      Display this usage info then exit
```

12.2.2 Environment Variables

The following environment variables control `opensm` behavior:

- OSM_TMP_DIR

  Controls the directory in which the temporary files generated by opensm are created. These files are: `opensm-subnet.lst`, `opensm.fdbs`, and `opensm.mcfdbs`. By default, this directory is `/var/log`.

- OSM_CACHE_DIR

  `opensm` stores certain data to the disk such that subsequent runs are consistent. The default directory used is `/var/cache/opensm`. The following file is included in it:

  - `guid2lid` – stores the LID range assigned to each GUID

12.2.3 Signaling

When opensm receives a HUP signal, it starts a new heavy sweep as if a trap has been received or a topology change has been found.

Also, SIGUSR1 can be used to trigger a reopen of `/var/log/opensm.log` for logrotate purposes.

12.2.4 Running opensm

The defaults of **opensm** were designed to meet the common case usage on clusters with up to a few hundred nodes. Thus, in this default mode, **opensm** will scan the IB fabric, initialize it, and sweep occasionally for changes. To run **opensm** in the default mode, simply enter:

```
host1# opensm
```

Note that **opensm** needs to be run on at least one machine in an IB subnet.

By default, an **opensm** run is logged to two files: `/var/log/messages` and `/var/log/opensm.log`. The first file, `message`, registers only general major events; the second file, `opensm.log`, includes details of reported errors. All errors reported in `opensm.log` should be treated as indicators of IB fabric health. Both log files should include the message “SUBNET UP” if opensm was able to setup the subnet correctly.

Note: If a fatal, non-recoverable error occurs, **opensm** exits.

12.2.4.1 Running OpenSM As Daemon

OpenSM can also run as daemon. To run OpenSM in this mode, enter:

```
host1# /etc/init.d/opensmd start
```

12.3 osmtest Description

osmtest is a test program for validating the InfiniBand Subnet Manager and Subnet Administrator. **osmtest** provides a test suite for **opensm**. It can create an inventory file of all available nodes, ports, and PathRecords, including all their fields. It can also verify the existing inventory with all the object fields, and matches it to a pre-saved one. See Section 12.3.2.

osmtest has the following test flows:

- Multicast Compliancy test
- Event Forwarding test
- Service Record registration test
- RMPP stress test
- Small SA Queries stress test

12.3.1 Syntax

```
osmtest [OPTIONS]
```

where OPTIONS are:

```
-f, --flow          This option directs osmtest to run a specific flow:
                    Flow  Description:
                    c = create an inventory file with all nodes, ports and
                    paths
                    a = run all validation tests (expecting an input inventory)
                    v = only validate the given inventory file
                    s = run service registration, deregistration, and lease
                    test
                    e = run event forwarding test
                    f = flood the SA with queries according to the stress mode
                    m = multicast flow
                    q = QoS info: dump VLArb and SLtoVL tables
                    t = run trap 64/65 flow (this flow requires running of
                    external tool)
                    Default = all flows except QoS

-w, --wait          This option specifies the wait time for trap 64/65 in sec-
                    onds. It is used only when running -f t - the trap 64/65
                    flow Default = 10 sec
-d, --debug         This  option  specifies  a  debug option.  These options are
                    not normally needed.  The number  following  -d  selects
                    the  debug option to enable as follows:
```

OPT	Description
-d0	Ignore other SM nodes
-d1	Force single threaded dispatching
-d2	Force log flushing after each log message
-d3	Disable multicast support

-m, --max_lid This option specifies the maximal LID number to be searched for during inventory file build (Default = 100)

-g, --guid This option specifies the local port GUID value with which OpenSM should bind. OpenSM may be bound to 1 port at a time. If GUID given is 0, OpenSM displays a list of possible port GUIDs and waits for user input. Without -g, OpenSM tries to use the default port.

-p, --port This option displays a menu of possible local port GUID values with which osmtest could bind

-i, --inventory This option specifies the name of the inventory file Normally, osmtest expects to find an inventory file, which osmtest uses to validate real-time information received from the SA during testing. If -i is not specified, osmtest defaults to the file osmtest.dat.
See -c option for related information

-s, --stress This option runs the specified stress test instead of the normal test suite Stress test options are as follows:

OPT	Description
-s1	Single-MAD response SA queries
-s2	Multi-MAD (RMPP) response SA queries
-s3	Multi-MAD (RMPP) Path Record SA queries

Without -s, stress testing is not performed

-M, --Multicast_Mode This option specify length of Multicast test:

OPT	Description
-M1	Short Multicast Flow (default) - single mode
-M2	Short Multicast Flow - multiple mode
-M3	Long Multicast Flow - single mode
-M4	Long Multicast Flow - multiple mode

Single mode - Osmtest is tested alone, with no other apps that interact with OpenSM MC

Multiple mode - Could be run with other apps using MC with OpenSM. Without -M, default flow testing is performed

```
-t, --timeout       This option specifies the time in milliseconds used for
                    transaction  timeouts.  Specifying -t 0 disables timeouts.
                    Without -t, OpenSM defaults to a timeout value of 200 mil-
                    liseconds.

-l, --log_file      This option defines the log to be the given  file.   By
                    default the log goes to /var/log/osm.log.  For the log to
                    go to standard output use -f stdout.

-v, --verbose       This option increases the log verbosity level.   The  -v
                    option may  be  specified  multiple  times to further
                    increase the verbosity level.  See the -vf option for  more
                    information  about log verbosity.

-V                  This  option  sets  the  maximum  verbosity level and forces
                    log flushing.  The -V is equivalent to '-vf 0xFF -d 2'.  See
                    the -vf option for more information about log verbosity.

-vf                 This  option  sets  the log verbosity level.  A flags field
                    must follow the -D option.  A bit set/clear in the flags
                    enables/disables a specific log level as follows:
                    BIT    LOG LEVEL ENABLED
                    ----   -----------------
                    0x01 - ERROR (error messages)
                    0x02 - INFO (basic messages, low volume)
                    0x04 - VERBOSE (interesting stuff, moderate volume)
                    0x08 - DEBUG (diagnostic, high volume)
                    0x10 - FUNCS (function entry/exit, very high volume)
                    0x20 - FRAMES (dumps all SMP and GMP frames)
                    0x40 - ROUTING (dump FDB routing information)
                    0x80 - currently unused.

                    Without  -vf,  osmtest defaults to ERROR + INFO (0x3) Spec-
                    ifying -vf 0 disables all messages Specifying -vf 0xFF
                    enables all messages  (see -V) High verbosity levels may
                    require increasing the transaction timeout with the -t
                    option

-h, --help          Display this usage info then exit.
```

12.3.2 Running osmtest

To run **osmtest** in the default mode, simply enter:

```
host1# osmtest
```

The default mode runs all the flows except for the Quality of Service flow (see Section 12.6).

After installing **opensm** (and if the InfiniBand fabric is stable), it is recommended to run the following command in order to generate the inventory file:

```
host1# osmtest -f c
```

Immediately afterwards, run the following command to test **opensm**:

```
host1# osmtest -f a
```

Finally, it is recommended to occasionally run "**osmtest -v**" (with verbosity) to verify that nothing in the fabric has changed.

12.4 Partitions

OpenSM enables the configuration of partitions (PKeys) in an InfiniBand fabric. By default, OpenSM searches for the partitions configuration file under the name `/usr/etc/opensm/partitions.conf`. To change this filename, you can use **opensm** with the '--Pconfig' or '-P' flags.

The default partition is created by OpenSM unconditionally, even when a partition configuration file does not exist or cannot be accessed.

The default partition has a P_Key value of 0x7fff. The port out of which runs OpenSM is assigned full membership in the default partition. All other end-ports are assigned partial membership.

12.4.1 File Format

Notes:

- Line content followed after '#' character is comment and ignored by parser.

General File Format

```
<Partition Definition>:<PortGUIDs list> ;
```

Partition Definition:

```
[PartitionName][=PKey][,flag[=value]][,defmember=full|limited]
```

where

PartitionName	string, will be used with logging. When omitted, an empty string will be used.
PKey	P_Key value for this partition. Only low 15 bits will be used. When omitted, P_Key will be autogenerated.
flag	used to indicate IPoIB capability of this partition.
defmember=full|limited	specifies default membership for port guid list. Default is limited.

Currently recognized flags are:

ipoib	indicates that this partition may be used for IPoIB, as a result IPoIB capable MC group will be created.
rate=<val>	specifies rate for this IPoIB MC group (default is 3 (10GBps))

mtu=<val>	specifies MTU for this IPoIB MC group (default is 4 (2048))
sl=<val>	specifies SL for this IPoIB MC group (default is 0)
scope=<val>	specifies scope for this IPoIB MC group (default is 2 (link local))

Note that values for rate, mtu, and scope should be specified as defined in the IBTA specification (for example, mtu=4 for 2048).

PortGUIDs list:

PortGUID	GUID of partition member EndPort. Hexadecimal numbers should start from 0x, decimal numbers are accepted too.
full or limited	indicates full or limited membership for this port. When omitted (or unrecognized) limited membership is assumed.

There are two useful keywords for PortGUID definition:

- 'ALL' means all end-ports in this subnet
- 'SELF' means subnet manager's port

An empty list means that there are no ports in this partition.

Notes:

- White space is permitted between delimiters ('=', ',',':',';').
- The line can be wrapped after ':' after a Partition Definition and between.
- A PartitionName *does not* need to be unique, but PKey *does* need to be unique.
- If a PKey is repeated then the associated partition configurations will be merged and the first PartitionName will be used (see also next note).
- It is possible to split a partition configuration in more than one definition, but then they PKey should be explicitly specified (otherwise different PKey values will be generated for those definitions).

Examples:

```
Default=0x7fff : ALL, SELF=full ;
NewPartition , ipoib : 0x123456=full, 0x3456789034=limi,  0x2134af2306;

YetAnotherOne = 0x300 : SELF=full ;
YetAnotherOne = 0x300 : ALL=limited ;

ShareIO = 0x80 , defmember=full : 0x123451, 0x123452;
# 0x123453, 0x123454 will be limited
ShareIO = 0x80 : 0x123453, 0x123454, 0x123455=full;
# 0x123456, 0x123457 will be limited
ShareIO   =   0x80   :   defmember=limited   :   0x123456,   0x123457,
              0x123458=full;
ShareIO = 0x80 , defmember=full : 0x123459, 0x12345a;
```

```
ShareIO = 0x80 , defmember=full : 0x12345b, 0x12345c=limited,
          0x12345d;
```

Note: The following rule is equivalent to how OpenSM used to run prior to the partition manager:

```
Default=0x7fff,ipoib:ALL=full;
```

12.5 Routing Algorithms

OpenSM offers five routing engines:

1. Min Hop algorithm

   Based on the minimum hops to each node where the path length is optimized.

2. UPDN Unicast routing algorithm

   Based on the minimum hops to each node, but it is constrained to ranking rules. This algorithm should be chosen if the subnet is not a pure Fat Tree, and a deadlock may occur due to a loop in the subnet.

3. Fat Tree Unicast routing algorithm

   This algorithm optimizes routing for a congestion-free “shift” communication pattern. It should be chosen if a subnet is a symmetrical Fat Tree of various types, not just a K-ary-N-Tree: non-constant K, not fully staffed, and for any CBB ratio. Similar to UPDN, Fat Tree routing is constrained to ranking rules.

4. LASH Unicast routing algorithm

   Uses InfiniBand virtual layers (SL) to provide deadlock-free shortest-path routing while also distributing the paths between layers. LASH is an alternative deadlock-free, topology-agnostic routing algorithm to the non-minimal UPDN algorithm. It avoids the use of a potentially congested root node.

5. DOR Unicast routing algorithm

   Based on the Min Hop algorithm, but avoids port equalization except for redundant links between the same two switches. This provides deadlock free routes for hypercubes when the fabric is cabled as a hypercube and for meshes when cabled as a mesh.

OpenSM also supports a file method which can load routes from a table – see Modular Routing Engine below.

The basic routing algorithm is comprised of two stages:

1. MinHop matrix calculation

   How many hops are required to get from each port to each LID? The algorithm to fill these tables is different if you run standard (min hop) or Up/Down. For standard routing, a "relaxation" algorithm is used to propagate min hop from every destination LID through neighbor switches. For Up/Down routing, a BFS from every target is used. The BFS tracks link direction (up or down) and avoid steps that will perform up after a down step was used.

2. Once MinHop matrices exist, each switch is visited and for each target LID a decision is made as to what port should be used to get to that LID. This step is common to standard and Up/Down routing. Each port has a counter counting the number of target LIDs going through it. When there are multiple alternative ports with same MinHop to a LID, the one with less previously assigned ports is selected.

   If LMC > 0, more checks are added. Within each group of LIDs assigned to same target port:

a. Use only ports which have same MinHop

b. First prefer the ones that go to different systemImageGuid (then the previous LID of the same LMC group)

c. If none, prefer those which go through another NodeGuid

d. Fall back to the number of paths method (if all go to same node).

12.5.1 Effect of Topology Changes

OpenSM will preserve existing routing in any case where there is no change in the fabric switches unless the -r (--reassign_lids) option is specified.

```
-r, --reassign_lids
                    This option causes OpenSM to reassign LIDs to all end
                    nodes. Specifying -r on a running subnet may disrupt subnet
                    traffic. Without -r, OpenSM attempts to preserve existing
                    LID assignments resolving multiple use of same LID.
```

If a link is added or removed, OpenSM does not recalculate the routes that do not have to change. A route has to change if the port is no longer UP or no longer the MinHop. When routing changes are performed, the same algorithm for balancing the routes is invoked.

In the case of using the file based routing, any topology changes are currently ignored The 'file' routing engine just loads the LFTs from the file specified, with no reaction to real topology. Obviously, this will not be able to recheck LIDs (by GUID) for disconnected nodes, and LFTs for non-existent switches will be skipped. Multicast is not affected by 'file' routing engine (this uses min hop tables).

12.5.2 Min Hop Algorithm

The Min Hop algorithm is invoked when neither UPDN or the file method are specified. The Min Hop algorithm is divided into two stages: computation of minhop tables on every switch and LFT output port assignment. Link subscription is also equalized with the ability to override based on port GUID. The latter is supplied by:

```
-i <equalize-ignore-guids-file>
-ignore-guids <equalize-ignore-guids-file>
                    This option provides the means to define a set of ports (by
                    guid) that will be ignored by the link load equalization
                    algorithm. Note that only endports (CA, switch port 0, and
                    router ports) and not switch external ports are supported.
```

LMC awareness routes based on (remote) system or switch basis.

12.5.3 Purpose of UPDN Algorithm

The UPDN algorithm is designed to prevent deadlocks from occurring in loops of the subnet. A loop-deadlock is a situation in which it is no longer possible to send data between any two hosts

connected through the loop. As such, the UPDN routing algorithm should be used if the subnet is not a pure Fat Tree, and one of its loops may experience a deadlock (due, for example, to high pressure).

The UPDN algorithm is based on the following main stages:

1. Auto-detect root nodes - based on the CA hop length from any switch in the subnet, a statistical histogram is built for each switch (hop num vs number of occurrences). If the histogram reflects a specific column (higher than others) for a certain node, then it is marked as a root node. Since the algorithm is statistical, it may not find any root nodes. The list of the root nodes found by this auto-detect stage is used by the ranking process stage.

   Note: The user can override the node list manually.

   Note: If this stage cannot find any root nodes, and the user did not specify a guid list file, OpenSM defaults back to the Min Hop routing algorithm.

2. Ranking process - All root switch nodes (found in stage 1) are assigned a rank of 0. Using the BFS algorithm, the rest of the switch nodes in the subnet are ranked incrementally. This ranking aids in the process of enforcing rules that ensure loop-free paths.
3. Min Hop Table setting - after ranking is done, a BFS algorithm is run from each (CA or switch) node in the subnet. During the BFS process, the FDB table of each switch node traversed by BFS is updated, in reference to the starting node, based on the ranking rules and guid values.

At the end of the process, the updated FDB tables ensure loop-free paths through the subnet.

Note: Up/Down routing does not allow LID routing communication between switches that are located inside spine “switch systems”. The reason is that there is no way to allow a LID route between them that does not break the Up/Down rule. One ramification of this is that you cannot run SM on switches other than the leaf switches of the fabric.

12.5.3.1 UPDN Algorithm Usage

Activation through OpenSM

- Use '-R updn' option (instead of old '-u') to activate the UPDN algorithm.
- Use '-a <root_guid_file>' for adding an UPDN guid file that contains the root nodes for ranking. If the `-a' option is not used, OpenSM uses its auto-detect root nodes algorithm.

Notes on the guid list file:

1. A valid guid file specifies one guid in each line. Lines with an invalid format will be discarded.
2. The user should specify the root switch guids. However, it is also possible to specify CA guids; OpenSM will use the guid of the switch (if it exists) that connects the CA to the subnet as a root node.

12.5.4 Fat-tree Routing Algorithm

The fat-tree algorithm optimizes routing for "shift" communication pattern. It should be chosen if a subnet is a symmetrical or almost symmetrical fat-tree of various types. It supports not just K-ary-N-Trees, by handling for non-constant K, cases where not all leafs (CAs) are present, any CBB ratio. As in UPDN, fat-tree also prevents credit-loop-deadlocks.

If the root guid file is not provided ('-a' or '--root_guid_file' options), the topology has to be pure fat-tree that complies with the following rules:

- Tree rank should be between two and eight (inclusively)
- Switches of the same rank should have the same number of UP-going port groups[1], unless they are root switches, in which case the shouldn't have UP-going ports at all.
- Switches of the same rank should have the same number of DOWN-going port groups, unless they are leaf switches.
- Switches of the same rank should have the same number of ports in each UP-going port group.
- Switches of the same rank should have the same number of ports in each DOWN-going port group.
- All the CAs have to be at the same tree level (rank).

If the root guid file is provided, the topology doesn't have to be pure fat-tree, and it should only comply with the following rules:

- Tree rank should be between two and eight (inclusively)
- All the Compute Nodes[2] have to be at the same tree level (rank). Note that non-compute node CAs are allowed here to be at different tree ranks.

Topologies that do not comply cause a fallback to min hop routing. Note that this can also occur on link failures which cause the topology to no longer be a "pure" fat-tree.

Note that although fat-tree algorithm supports trees with non-integer CBB ratio, the routing will not be as balanced as in case of integer CBB ratio. In addition to this, although the algorithm

1. Ports that are connected to the same remote switch are referenced as 'port group'
2. List of compute nodes (CNs) can be specified by '-u' or '--cn_guid_file' OpenSM options.

allows leaf switches to have any number of CAs, the closer the tree is to be fully populated, the more effective the "shift" communication pattern will be. In general, even if the root list is provided, the closer the topology to a pure and symmetrical fat-tree, the more optimal the routing will be.

The algorithm also dumps compute node ordering file (`opensm-ftree-ca-order.dump`) in the same directory where the OpenSM log resides. This ordering file provides the CN order that may be used to create efficient communication pattern, that will match the routing tables.

Activation through OpenSM

- Use '-R ftree' option to activate the fat-tree algorithm.
- Use '-a <root_guid_file>' to provide root nodes for ranking. If the '-a' option is not used, routing algorithm will detect roots automatically.
- Use '-u <root_cn_file>' to provide the list of compute nodes. If the '-u' option is not used, all the CAs are considered as compute nodes.

Note: LMC > 0 is not supported by fat-tree routing. If this is specified, the default routing algorithm is invoked instead.

12.5.5 LASH Routing Algorithm

LASH is an acronym for LAyered SHortest Path Routing. It is a deterministic shortest path routing algorithm that enables topology agnostic deadlock-free routing within communication networks.

When computing the routing function, LASH analyzes the network topology for the shortest-path routes between all pairs of sources / destinations and groups these paths into virtual layers in such a way as to avoid deadlock.

Note: LASH analyzes routes and ensures deadlock freedom between switch pairs. The link from HCA between and switch does not need virtual layers as deadlock will not arise between switch and HCA.

In more detail, the algorithm works as follows:

1. LASH determines the shortest-path between all pairs of source / destination switches. Note, LASH ensures the same SL is used for all SRC/DST - DST/SRC pairs and there is no guarantee that the return path for a given DST/SRC will be the reverse of the route SRC/DST.
2. LASH then begins an SL assignment process where a route is assigned to a layer (SL) if the addition of that route does not cause deadlock within that layer. This is achieved by maintaining and analysing a channel dependency graph for each layer. Once the potential addition of a path could lead to deadlock, LASH opens a new layer and continues the process.
3. Once this stage has been completed, it is highly likely that the first layers processed will contain more paths than the latter ones. To better balance the use of layers, LASH moves paths from one layer to another so that the number of paths in each layer averages out.

Note that the implementation of LASH in opensm attempts to use as few layers as possible. This number can be less than the number of actual layers available.

In general LASH is a very flexible algorithm. It can, for example, reduce to Dimension Order Routing in certain topologies, it is topology agnostic and fares well in the face of faults.

It has been shown that for both regular and irregular topologies, LASH outperforms Up/Down. The reason for this is that LASH distributes the traffic more evenly through a network, avoiding the bottleneck issues related to a root node and always routes shortest-path.

The algorithm was developed by Simula Research Laboratory.

Use '-R lash -Q' option to activate the LASH algorithm

Note: QoS support has to be turned on in order that SL/VL mappings are used.

Note: LMC > 0 is not supported by the LASH routing. If this is specified, the default routing algorithm is invoked instead.

12.5.6 DOR Routing Algorithm

The Dimension Order Routing algorithm is based on the Min Hop algorithm and so uses shortest paths. Instead of spreading traffic out across different paths with the same shortest distance, it chooses among the available shortest paths based on an ordering of dimensions. Each port must be consistently cabled to represent a hypercube dimension or a mesh dimension. Paths are grown from a destination back to a source using the lowest dimension (port) of available paths at each step. This provides the ordering necessary to avoid deadlock. When there are multiple links between any two switches, they still represent only one dimension and traffic is balanced across them unless port equalization is turned off. In the case of hypercubes, the same port must be used throughout the fabric to represent the hypercube dimension and match on both ends of the cable. In the case of meshes, the dimension should consistently use the same pair of ports, one port on one end of the cable, and the other port on the other end, continuing along the mesh dimension.

Use '-R dor' option to activate the DOR algorithm.

12.5.7 Routing References

To learn more about deadlock-free routing, see the article "Deadlock Free Message Routing in Multiprocessor Interconnection Networks" by William J Dally and Charles L Seitz (1985).

To learn more about the up/down algorithm, see the article "Effective Strategy to Compute Forwarding Tables for InfiniBand Networks" by Jose Carlos Sancho, Antonio Robles, and Jose Duato at the Universidad Politecnica de Valencia.

To learn more about LASH and the flexibility behind it, the requirement for layers, performance comparisons to other algorithms, see the following articles:

- "Layered Routing in Irregular Networks", Lysne et al, IEEE Transactions on Parallel and Distributed Systems, VOL.16, No12, December 2005.
- "Routing for the ASI Fabric Manager", Solheim et al. IEEE Communications Magazine, Vol.44, No.7, July 2006.

- "Layered Shortest Path (LASH) Routing in Irregular System Area Networks", Skeie et al. IEEE Computer Society Communication Architecture for Clusters 2002.

12.5.8 Modular Routine Engine

Modular routing engine structure allows for the ease of "plugging" new routing modules. Currently, only unicast callbacks are supported. Multicast can be added later.

One existing routing module is up-down "updn", which may be activated with '-R updn' option (instead of old '-u').

General usage is:

```
host1# opensm -R 'module-name'
```

There is also a trivial routing module which is able to load LFT tables from a dump file.

Main features are:

- This will load switch LFTs and/or LID matrices (min hops tables)
- This will load switch LFTs according to the path entries introduced in the dump file
- No additional checks will be performed (such as "is port connected", etc.)
- In case when fabric LIDs were changed this will try to reconstruct LFTs correctly if endport GUIDs are represented in the dump file (in order to disable this, GUIDs may be removed from the dump file or zeroed)

The dump file format is compatible with output of 'ibroute' utility and for whole fabric can be generated with dump_lfts.sh script.

To activate file based routing module, use:

```
host1# opensm -R file -U /path/to/dump_file
```

If the dump_file is not found or is in error, the default routing algorithm is utilized. The ability to dump switch lid matrices (aka min hops tables) to file and later to load these is also supported.

The usage is similar to unicast forwarding tables loading from dump file (introduced by 'file' routing engine), but new lid matrix file name should be specified by `-M` or `--lid_matrix_file` option. For example:

```
host1# opensm -R file -M ./opensm-lid-matrix.dump
```

The dump file is named `'opensm-lid-matrix.dump'` and will be generated in the standard opensm dump directory (`/var/log` by default) when OSM_LOG_ROUTING logging flag is set. When routing engine 'file' is activated, but the dump file is not specified or cannot be opened, the default lid matrix algorithm will be used.

There is also a switch forwarding tables dumper which generates a file compatible with dump_lfts.sh output. This file can be used as input for forwarding tables loading by 'file' routing engine. Both or one of options -U and -M can be specified together with '-R file'.

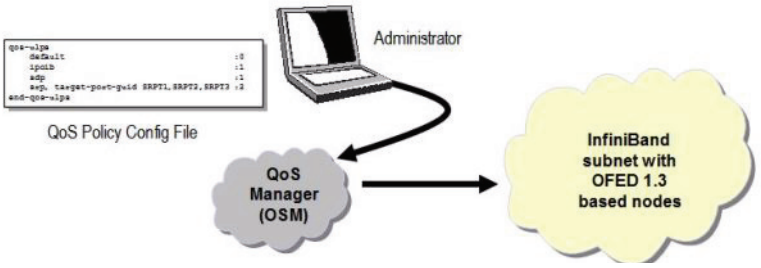
12.6 Quality of Service Management in OpenSM

12.6.1 Overview

When Quality of Service (QoS) in OpenSM is enabled (using the '-Q' or '--qos' flags), OpenSM looks for a QoS Policy file. During fabric initialization and at every heavy sweep, OpenSM parses the QoS policy file, applies its settings to the discovered fabric elements, and enforces the provided policy on client requests. The overall flow for such requests is as follows:

- The request is matched against the defined matching rules such that the QoS Level definition is found
- Given the QoS Level, a path(s) search is performed with the given restrictions imposed by that level

Figure 3: QoS Manager



There are two ways to define QoS policy:

- Advanced – the advanced policy file syntax provides the administrator various ways to match a PathRecord/MultiPathRecord (PR/MPR) request, and to enforce various QoS constraints on the requested PR/MPR
- Simple – the simple policy file syntax enables the administrator to match PR/MPR requests by various ULPs and applications running on top of these ULPs

12.6.2 Advanced QoS Policy File

The QoS policy file has the following sections:

I) Port Groups (denoted by port-groups)

This section defines zero or more port groups that can be referred later by matching rules (see below). Port group lists ports by:

- Port GUID
- Port name, which is a combination of NodeDescription and IB port number
- PKey, which means that all the ports in the subnet that belong to partition with a given PKey belong to this port group
- Partition name, which means that all the ports in the subnet that belong to partition with a given name belong to this port group
- Node type, where possible node types are: CA, SWITCH, ROUTER, ALL, and SELF (SM's port).

II) QoS Setup (denoted by qos-setup)

This section describes how to set up SL2VL and VL Arbitration tables on various nodes in the fabric. However, this is not supported in OFED. SL2VL and VLArb tables should be configured in the OpenSM options file (default location - /var/cache/opensm/opensm.opts).

III) QoS Levels (denoted by qos-levels)

Each QoS Level defines Service Level (SL) and a few optional fields:

- MTU limit
- Rate limit
- PKey
- Packet lifetime

When path(s) search is performed, it is done with regards to restriction that these QoS Level parameters impose. One QoS level that is mandatory to define is a DEFAULT QoS level. It is applied to a PR/MPR query that does not match any existing match rule. Similar to any other QoS Level, it can also be explicitly referred by any match rule.

IV) QoS Matching Rules (denoted by qos-match-rules)

Each PathRecord/MultiPathRecord query that OpenSM receives is matched against the set of matching rules. Rules are scanned in order of appearance in the QoS policy file such as the first match takes precedence.

Each rule has a name of QoS level that will be applied to the matching query. A default QoS level is applied to a query that did not match any rule.

Queries can be matched by:

- Source port group (whether a source port is a member of a specified group)
- Destination port group (same as above, only for destination port)
- PKey
- QoS class
- Service ID

To match a certain matching rule, PR/MPR query has to match ALL the rule's criteria. However, not all the fields of the PR/MPR query have to appear in the matching rule.

For instance, if the rule has a single criterion - Service ID, it will match any query that has this Service ID, disregarding rest of the query fields. However, if a certain query has only Service ID (which means that this is the only bit in the PR/MPR component mask that is on), it will not match any rule that has other matching criteria besides Service ID.

12.6.3 Simple QoS Policy Definition

Simple QoS policy definition comprises of a single section denoted by qos-ulps. Similar to the advanced QoS policy, it has a list of match rules and their QoS Level, but in this case a match rule has only one criterion - its goal is to match a certain ULP (or a certain application on top of this ULP) PR/MPR request, and QoS Level has only one constraint - Service Level (SL).

The simple policy section may appear in the policy file in combine with the advanced policy, or as a stand-alone policy definition. See more details and list of match rule criteria below.

12.6.4 Policy File Syntax Guidelines

- Leading and trailing blanks, as well as empty lines, are ignored, so the indentation in the example is just for better readability.
- Comments are started with the pound sign (#) and terminated by EOL.
- Any keyword should be the first non-blank in the line, unless it's a comment.
- Keywords that denote section/subsection start have matching closing keywords.
- Having a QoS Level named "DEFAULT" is a must - it is applied to PR/MPR requests that didn't match any of the matching rules.
- Any section/subsection of the policy file is optional.

12.6.5 Examples of Advanced Policy File

As mentioned earlier, any section of the policy file is optional, and the only mandatory part of the policy file is a default QoS Level.

Here's an example of the shortest policy file:

```
qos-levels
    qos-level
        name: DEFAULT
        sl: 0
    end-qos-level
end-qos-levels
```

Port groups section is missing because there are no match rules, which means that port groups are not referred anywhere, and there is no need defining them. And since this policy file doesn't have any matching rules, PR/MPR query will not match any rule, and OpenSM will enforce default QoS level. Essentially, the above example is equivalent to not having a QoS policy file at all.

The following example shows all the possible options and keywords in the policy file and their syntax:

```
#
# See the comments in the following example.
# They explain different keywords and their meaning.
```

```
    #
    port-groups

        port-group # using port GUIDs
            name: Storage
            # "use" is just a description that is used for logging
            #  Other than that, it is just a comment
            use: SRP Targets
            port-guid: 0x10000000000001, 0x10000000000005-
0x1000000000FFFA
            port-guid: 0x1000000000FFFF
        end-port-group

        port-group
            name: Virtual Servers
            # The syntax of the port name is as follows:
            #   "node_description/Pnum".
           # node_description is compared to the NodeDescription of the
node,
            # and "Pnum" is a port number on that node.
            port-name: vs1 HCA-1/P1, vs2 HCA-1/P1
        end-port-group

        # using partitions defined in the partition policy
        port-group
            name: Partitions
            partition: Part1
            pkey: 0x1234
        end-port-group

       # using node types: CA, ROUTER, SWITCH, SELF (for node that runs
SM)
        # or ALL (for all the nodes in the subnet)
        port-group
            name: CAs and SM
            node-type: CA, SELF
        end-port-group

    end-port-groups

    qos-setup
        # This section of the policy file describes how to set up SL2VL
and VL
        # Arbitration tables on various nodes in the fabric.
```

```
        # However, this is not supported in OFED - the section is parsed
        # and ignored. SL2VL and VLArb tables should be configured in the
        # OpenSM options file (by default - /var/cache/opensm/
opensm.opts).
    end-qos-setup

    qos-levels

        # Having a QoS Level named "DEFAULT" is a must - it is applied to
        # PR/MPR requests that didn't match any of the matching rules.
        qos-level
            name: DEFAULT
            use: default QoS Level
            sl: 0
        end-qos-level

        # the whole set: SL, MTU-Limit, Rate-Limit, PKey, Packet Lifetime
        qos-level
            name: WholeSet
            sl: 1
            mtu-limit: 4
            rate-limit: 5
            pkey: 0x1234
            packet-life: 8
        end-qos-level

    end-qos-levels

    # Match rules are scanned in order of their apperance in the policy
file.
    # First matched rule takes precedence.
    qos-match-rules

        # matching by single criteria: QoS class
        qos-match-rule
            use: by QoS class
            qos-class: 7-9,11
            # Name of qos-level to apply to the matching PR/MPR
            qos-level-name: WholeSet
        end-qos-match-rule

        # show matching by destination group and service id
        qos-match-rule
```

```
            use: Storage targets
            destination: Storage
            service-id: 0x10000000000001, 0x10000000000008-
0x10000000000FFF
            qos-level-name: WholeSet
        end-qos-match-rule

        qos-match-rule
            source: Storage
            use: match by source group only
            qos-level-name: DEFAULT
        end-qos-match-rule

        qos-match-rule
            use: match by all parameters
            qos-class: 7-9,11
            source: Virtual Servers
            destination: Storage
            service-id: 0x0000000000010000-0x000000000001FFFF
            pkey: 0x0F00-0x0FFF
            qos-level-name: WholeSet
        end-qos-match-rule

    end-qos-match-rules
```

12.6.6 Simple QoS Policy - Details and Examples

Simple QoS policy match rules are tailored for matching ULPs (or some application on top of a ULP) PR/MPR requests. This section has a list of per-ULP (or per-application) match rules and the SL that should be enforced on the matched PR/MPR query.

Match rules include:

- Default match rule that is applied to PR/MPR query that didn't match any of the other match rules
- SDP
- SDP application with a specific target TCP/IP port range
- SRP with a specific target IB port GUID
- RDS
- IPoIB with a default PKey
- IPoIB with a specific PKey
- Any ULP/application with a specific Service ID in the PR/MPR query

- Any ULP/application with a specific PKey in the PR/MPR query
- Any ULP/application with a specific target IB port GUID in the PR/MPR query

Since any section of the policy file is optional, as long as basic rules of the file are kept (such as no referring to nonexisting port group, having default QoS Level, etc), the simple policy section (qos-ulps) can serve as a complete QoS policy file.

The shortest policy file in this case would be as follows:

```
qos-ulps
    default  : 0 #default SL
end-qos-ulps
```

It is equivalent to the previous example of the shortest policy file, and it is also equivalent to not having policy file at all. Below is an example of simple QoS policy with all the possible keywords:

```
qos-ulps
    default                         : 0 # default SL
    sdp, port-num 30000           : 0 # SL for application running on
                                      # top of SDP when a destination
                                      # TCP/IPport is 30000
    sdp, port-num 10000-20000     : 0
    sdp                           : 1 # default SL for any other
                                      # application running on top
of SDP
    rds                           : 2 # SL for RDS traffic
    ipoib, pkey 0x0001           : 0 # SL for IPoIB on partition with
                                      # pkey 0x0001
    ipoib                         : 4 # default IPoIB partition,
                                      # pkey=0x7FFF
    any, service-id 0x6234        : 6 # match any PR/MPR query with a
                                      # specific Service ID
    any, pkey 0x0ABC              : 6 # match any PR/MPR query with a
                                      # specific PKey
    srp, target-port-guid 0x1234  : 5 # SRP when SRP Target is
located
                                      # on a specified IB port GUID
    any, target-port-guid 0x0ABC-0xFFFFF : 6 # match any PR/MPR query
                                    # with a specific target port GUID
end-qos-ulps
```

Similar to the advanced policy definition, matching of PR/MPR queries is done in order of appearance in the QoS policy file such as the first match takes precedence, except for the "default" rule, which is applied only if the query didn't match any other rule. All other sections of the QoS policy

file take precedence over the qos-ulps section. That is, if a policy file has both qos-match-rules and qos-ulps sections, then any query is matched first against the rules in the qos-match-rules section, and only if there was no match, the query is matched against the rules in qos-ulps section.

Note that some of these match rules may overlap, so in order to use the simple QoS definition effectively, it is important to understand how each of the ULPs is matched.

12.6.6.1 IPoIB

IPoIB query is matched by PKey or by destination GID, in which case this is the GID of the multicast group that OpenSM creates for each IPoIB partition.

Default PKey for IPoIB partition is 0x7fff, so the following three match rules are equivalent:

```
ipoib              : <SL>
ipoib, pkey 0x7fff : <SL>
any,   pkey 0x7fff : <SL>
```

12.6.6.2 SDP

SDP PR query is matched by Service ID. The Service-ID for SDP is 0x000000000001PPPP, where PPPP are 4 hex digits holding the remote TCP/IP Port Number to connect to. The following two match rules are equivalent:

```
sdp                                                          : <SL>
any, service-id 0x0000000000010000-0x000000000001ffff : <SL>
```

12.6.6.3 RDS

Similar to SDP, RDS PR query is matched by Service ID. The Service ID for RDS is 0x000000000106PPPP, where PPPP are 4 hex digits holding the remote TCP/IP Port Number to connect to. Default port number for RDS is 0x48CA, which makes a default Service-ID 0x00000000010648CA. The following two match rules are equivalent:

```
rds                                  : <SL>
any, service-id 0x00000000010648CA : <SL>
```

12.6.6.4 SRP

Service ID for SRP varies from storage vendor to vendor, thus SRP query is matched by the target IB port GUID. The following two match rules are equivalent:

```
srp, target-port-guid 0x1234  : <SL>
any, target-port-guid 0x1234  : <SL>
```

Note that any of the above ULPs might contain target port GUID in the PR query, so in order for these queries not to be recognized by the QoS manager as SRP, the SRP match rule (or any match rule that refers to the target port guid only) should be placed at the end of the qos-ulps match rules.

12.6.6.5 MPI

SL for MPI is manually configured by MPI admin. OpenSM is not forcing any SL on the MPI traffic, and that's why it is the only ULP that did not appear in the qos-ulps section.

12.6.7 SL2VL Mapping and VL Arbitration

OpenSM cached options file has a set of QoS related configuration parameters, that are used to configure SL2VL mapping and VL arbitration on IB ports. These parameters are:

- Max VLs: the maximum number of VLs that will be on the subnet
- High limit: the limit of High Priority component of VL Arbitration table (IBA 7.6.9)
- VLArb low table: Low priority VL Arbitration table (IBA 7.6.9) template
- VLArb high table: High priority VL Arbitration table (IBA 7.6.9) template
- SL2VL: SL2VL Mapping table (IBA 7.6.6) template. It is a list of VLs corresponding to SLs 0-15 (Note that VL15 used here means drop this SL).

There are separate QoS configuration parameters sets for various target types: CAs, routers, switch external ports, and switch's enhanced port 0. The names of such parameters are prefixed by "qos_<type>_" string. Here is a full list of the currently supported sets:

- qos_ca_ - QoS configuration parameters set for CAs.
- qos_rtr_ - parameters set for routers.
- qos_sw0_ - parameters set for switches' port 0.
- qos_swe_ - parameters set for switches' external ports.

Here's the example of typical default values for CAs and switches' external ports (hard-coded in OpenSM initialization):

```
qos_ca_max_vls 15
qos_ca_high_limit 0
qos_ca_vlarb_high
0:4,1:0,2:0,3:0,4:0,5:0,6:0,7:0,8:0,9:0,10:0,11:0,12:0,13:0,14:0
qos_ca_vlarb_low
0:0,1:4,2:4,3:4,4:4,5:4,6:4,7:4,8:4,9:4,10:4,11:4,12:4,13:4,14:4
qos_ca_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,7
qos_swe_max_vls 15
qos_swe_high_limit 0
qos_swe_vlarb_high
0:4,1:0,2:0,3:0,4:0,5:0,6:0,7:0,8:0,9:0,10:0,11:0,12:0,13:0,14:0
qos_swe_vlarb_low
0:0,1:4,2:4,3:4,4:4,5:4,6:4,7:4,8:4,9:4,10:4,11:4,12:4,13:4,14:4
qos_swe_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,7
```

VL arbitration tables (both high and low) are lists of VL/Weight pairs. Each list entry contains a VL number (values from 0-14), and a weighting value (values 0-255), indicating the number of 64 byte units (credits) which may be transmitted from that VL when its turn in the arbitration occurs. A weight of 0 indicates that this entry should be skipped. If a list entry is programmed for VL15 or

for a VL that is not supported or is not currently configured by the port, the port may either skip that entry or send from any supported VL for that entry.

Note, that the same VLs may be listed multiple times in the High or Low priority arbitration tables, and, further, it can be listed in both tables. The limit of high-priority VLArb table (qos_<type>_high_limit) indicates the number of high-priority packets that can be transmitted without an opportunity to send a low-priority packet. Specifically, the number of bytes that can be sent is high_limit times 4K bytes.

A high_limit value of 255 indicates that the byte limit is unbounded.

Note: If the 255 value is used, the low priority VLs may be starved.

A value of 0 indicates that only a single packet from the high-priority table may be sent before an opportunity is given to the low-priority table.

Keep in mind that ports usually transmit packets of size equal to MTU. For instance, for 4KB MTU a single packet will require 64 credits, so in order to achieve effective VL arbitration for packets of 4KB MTU, the weighting values for each VL should be multiples of 64.

Below is an example of SL2VL and VL Arbitration configuration on subnet:

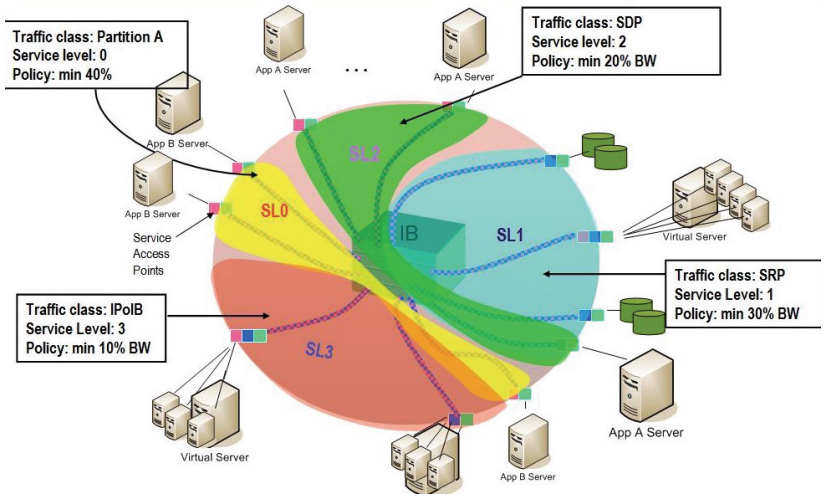
```
qos_ca_max_vls 15
qos_ca_high_limit 6
qos_ca_vlarb_high 0:4
qos_ca_vlarb_low 0:0,1:64,2:128,3:192,4:0,5:64,6:64,7:64
qos_ca_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,7
qos_swe_max_vls 15
qos_swe_high_limit 6
qos_swe_vlarb_high 0:4
qos_swe_vlarb_low 0:0,1:64,2:128,3:192,4:0,5:64,6:64,7:64
qos_swe_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,7
```

In this example, there are 8 VLs configured on subnet: VL0 to VL7. VL0 is defined as a high priority VL, and it is limited to 6 x 4KB = 24KB in a single transmission burst. Such configuration would suilt VL that needs low latency and uses small MTU when transmitting packets. Rest of VLs are defined as low priority VLs with different weights, while VL4 is effectively turned off.

12.6.8 Deployment Example

Figure 4 shows an example of an InfiniBand subnet that has been configured by a QoS manager to provide different service levels for various ULPs.

Figure 4: Example QoS Deployment on Infini-



12.7 QoS Configuration Examples

The following are examples of QoS configuration for different cluster deployments. Each example provides the QoS level assignment and their administration via OpenSM configuration files.

12.7.1 Typical HPC Example: MPI and Lustre

Assignment of QoS Levels

- MPI
  - Separate from I/O load
  - Min BW of 70%
- Storage Control (Lustre MDS)
  - Low latency
- Storage Data (Lustre OST)
  - Min BW 30%

Administration

- MPI is assigned an SL via the command line

```
host1# mpirun -sl 0
```

- OpenSM QoS policy file

Note: In the following policy file example, replace OST* and MDS* with the real port GUIDs.

```
qos-ulps
    default                                    :0 # default SL (for MPI)
    any, target-port-guid OST1,OST2,OST3,OST4:1 # SL for Lustre OST
```

```
    any, target-port-guid MDS1,MDS2          :2 # SL for Lustre MDS
end-qos-ulps
```

- OpenSM options file

```
qos_max_vls 8
qos_high_limit 0
qos_vlarb_high 2:1
qos_vlarb_low 0:96,1:224
qos_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,15,15,15,15,15,15,15,15
```

12.7.2 EDC SOA (2-tier): IPoIB and SRP

The following is an example of QoS configuration for a typical enterprise data center (EDC) with service oriented architecture (SOA), with IPoIB carrying all application traffic and SRP used for storage.

QoS Levels

- Application traffic
  - IPoIB (UD and CM) and SDP
  - Isolated from storage
  - Min BW of 50%
- SRP
  - Min BW 50%
  - Bottleneck at storage nodes

Administration

- OpenSM QoS policy file

Note: In the following policy file example, replace SRPT* with the real SRP Target port GUIDs.

```
qos-ulps
    default                                 :0
    ipoib                                   :1
    sdp                                     :1
    srp, target-port-guid SRPT1,SRPT2,SRPT3 :2
end-qos-ulps
```

- OpenSM options file

```
qos_max_vls 8
 qos_high_limit 0
 qos_vlarb_high 1:32,2:32
 qos_vlarb_low 0:1,
 qos_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,15,15,15,15,15,15,15,15
```

12.7.3 EDC (3-tier): IPoIB, RDS, SRP

The following is an example of QoS configuration for an enterprise data center (EDC), with IPoIB carrying all application traffic, RDS for database traffic, and SRP used for storage.

QoS Levels

- Management traffic (ssh)
  - IPoIB management VLAN (partition A)
  - Min BW 10%
- Application traffic
  - IPoIB application VLAN (partition B)
  - Isolated from storage and database
  - Min BW of 30%
- Database Cluster traffic
  - RDS
  - Min BW of 30%
- SRP
  - Min BW 30%
  - Bottleneck at storage nodes

Administration

- OpenSM QoS policy file

  Note: In the following policy file example, replace SRPT* with the real SRP Initiator port GUIDs.

```
qos-ulps
    default                                    : 0
    ipoib, pkey 0x8001                         : 1
    ipoib, pkey 0x8002                         : 2
    rds                                        : 3
    srp, target-port-guid SRPT1, SRPT2, SRPT3  : 4
end-qos-ulps
```

- OpenSM options file

```
qos_max_vls 8
qos_high_limit 0
qos_vlarb_high 1:32,2:96,3:96,4:96
qos_vlarb_low 0:1
qos_sl2vl 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,15,15,15,15,15,15,15,15
```

- Partition configuration file

```
Default=0x7fff,     ipoib : ALL=full;
PartA=0x8001, sl=1, ipoib : ALL=full;
PartB=0x8002, sl=2, ipoib : ALL=full;
```

13 Adaptive Routing

13.1 Overview

Adaptive Routing (AR) enables the switch to select the output port based on the port's load. AR supports two routing modes:

- Free AR: No constraints on output port selection.
- Bounded AR: The switch does not change the output port during the same transmission burst. This mode minimizes the appearance of out-of-order packets.

13.2 Running OpenSM With AR Manager

To enable AR Manager in OpenSM, run:

```
# opensm --ar
```

AR Manager scans all the fabric switches, figures out which switches support AR, and configures the AR functionality on these switches. Note that if some switches do not support AR, they will slow down the AR Manager as it may get timeouts on the AR-related queries to these switches.

To run AR Manager with an AR configuration file, enter:

```
# opensm --ar --ar_config_file <path to file>
```

Currently, there are two options in the config file:

1. Enable/disable AR on fabric switches by including the following line to the AR configuration file:

   ```
   enable <true|false>
   ```

   where the default value is "true", which is also valid for cases when the AR config file is not provided.

   This option is different from the OpenSM command line option '--ar'. The former controls AR on fabric switches, while the latter specifies whether AR Manager in OpenSM should be launched or not.

   Note that once AR is enabled, you will need to actively turn it off in order to disable it. To turn it off, set `enable` to "false" in the AR configuration file, and run OpenSM as follows:

   ```
   # opensm --ar --ar_config_file <path to file>
   ```

2. AR Mode. In the configuration file, set:

   ```
   ar_mode <bounded|free>
   ```

   where the default value is "bounded".

13.2.1 AR Configuration File Example

The following is an example of AR configuration file content:

```
# Begin AR configuration file
  enable true
  ar_mode bounded
# End AR configuration file
```

The above file has options with default values, which is equivalent to not having the AR configuration file at all.

14 InfiniBand Fabric Diagnostic Utilities

14.1 Overview

The diagnostic utilities described in this chapter provide means for debugging the connectivity and status of InfiniBand (IB) devices in a fabric. The tools are:

- "ibdiagnet (of ibutils2) - IB Net Diagnostic" (page 150)
- "ibdiagnet (of ibutils) - IB Net Diagnostic" (page 152)
- "ibdiagpath - IB diagnostic path" (page 155)
- "ibv_devices" (page 157)
- "ibv_devinfo" (page 157)
- "ibstatus" (page 159)
- "ibportstate" (page 161)
- "ibroute" (page 166)
- "smpquery" (page 170)
- "perfquery" (page 173)
- "ibcheckerrs" (page 177)
- "mstflint" (page 179)
- "ibv_asyncwatch" (page 183)
- "ibdump" (page 184)

14.2 Utilities Usage

This section first describes common configuration, interface, and addressing for all the tools in the package. Then it provides detailed descriptions of the tools themselves including: operation, synopsis and options descriptions, error codes, and examples.

14.2.1 Common Configuration, Interface and Addressing

Topology File (Optional)

An InfiniBand fabric is composed of switches and channel adapter (HCA/TCA) devices. To identify devices in a fabric (or even in one switch system), each device is given a GUID (a MAC equivalent). Since a GUID is a non-user-friendly string of characters, it is better to alias it to a meaningful, user-given name. For this objective, the IB Diagnostic Tools can be provided with a "topology file", which is an optional configuration file specifying the IB fabric topology in user-given names.

For diagnostic tools to fully support the topology file, the user may need to provide the local system name (if the local hostname is not used in the topology file).

To specify a topology file to a diagnostic tool use one of the following two options:

1. On the command line, specify the file name using the option '`-t <topology file name>`'

2. Define the environment variable IBDIAG_TOPO_FILE

To specify the local system name to an diagnostic tool use one of the following two options:

1. On the command line, specify the system name using the option '`-s <local system name>`'
2. Define the environment variable IBDIAG_SYS_NAME

14.2.2 IB Interface Definition

The diagnostic tools installed on a machine connect to the IB fabric by means of an HCA port through which they send MADs. To specify this port to an IB diagnostic tool use one of the following options:

1. On the command line, specify the port number using the option '-p <local port number>' (see below)
2. Define the environment variable IBDIAG_PORT_NUM

In case more than one HCA device is installed on the local machine, it is necessary to specify the device's index to the tool as well. For this use on of the following options:

1. On the command line, specify the index of the local device using the following option: '-i <index of local device>'
2. Define the environment variable IBDIAG_DEV_IDX

14.2.3 Addressing

Note: This section applies to the `ibdiagpath` tool only. A tool command may require defining the destination device or port to which it applies. The following addressing modes can be used to define the IB ports:

- Using a Directed Route to the destination: (Tool option '-d')

  This option defines a directed route of output port numbers from the local port to the destination.

- Using port LIDs: (Tool option '-l'):

  In this mode, the source and destination ports are defined by means of their LIDs. If the fabric is configured to allow multiple LIDs per port, then using any of them is valid for defining a port.

- Using port names defined in the topology file: (Tool option '-n')

  This option refers to the source and destination ports by the names defined in the topology file. (Therefore, this option is relevant only if a topology file is specified to the tool.) In this mode, the tool uses the names to extract the port LIDs from the matched topology, then the tool operates as in the '-l' option.

14.3 ibdiagnet (of ibutils2) - IB Net Diagnostic

Note: This version of ibdiagnet is included in the ibutils2 package, and it is *not* run by default after installing Mellanox OFED. To use this ibdiagnet version and not that of the ibutils package, you need to specify the full path: `/opt/bin/ibdiagnet`

Note: Please see ibutils2_release_notes.txt for additional information and known issues.

ibdiagnet scans the fabric using directed route packets and extracts all the available information regarding its connectivity and devices. It then produces the following files in the output directory (which is defined by the -o option described below).

14.3.1 SYNOPSYS

```
ibdiagnet [-i <dev-name>] [-p <port-num>]
    [-pm] [-pc] [-P <<PM>=<Value>>]
    [-r] [-u]
    [-lw <1x|4x|8x|12x>] [-ls <2.5|5|10>]
    [-skip <ibdiag stage>]
    [-o <out-dir>] [-h] [-V]
```

OPTIONS:

```
-i|--device <dev-name>
                    Specify the name of the device of the port used to connect
                    to the IB fabric (in case of multiple devices on the local
                    system)
-p|--port <port-num>
                    Specify the local device's port number used to connect to
                    the IB fabric
-pm                 Dump all pmCounters values into ibdiagnet.pm
-pc                 Reset all the fabric links pmCounters
-P|--counter <<PM>=<Value>>
                    Print any provided pm that is greater than its provided
                    value
-r|--routing        Provide a report of the fabric qualities
-u|--fat_tree       Indicate that UpDown credit loop checking should be done
                    against automatically determined roots
-lw <1x|4x|8x|12x>  Specify the expected link width
-ls <2.5|5|10>      Specify the expected link speed
-skip <ibdiag check>
                    Skip the execution of the given stage. Applicable to the
                    following stages: dup_guids|lids|links|sm|nodes_info|all
                    (default = None)
-o|--output_path <out-dir>
                    Specify the directory where the output files will be placed
--screen_num_errs   Specify the threshold for printing errors to screen
                    (default = 5). Placed (default = /var/tmp/ibdiagnet2/)
-h|--help           Print this help message
-V|--version        Print the version of the tool
```

14.3.2 Output Files

Table 7 lists the ibdiagnet output files that are placed under /var/tmp/ibdiagnet2.

Table 7 - ibdiagnet (of ibutils2) Output Files

Output File	Description
ibdiagnet2.lst	Fabric links in LST format
ibdiagnet2.sm	Subnet Manager
ibdiagnet2.pm	Ports Counters
ibdiagnet2.fdbs	Unicast FDBs
ibdiagnet2.mcfdbs	Multicast FDBx
ibdiagnet2.nodes_info	Information on nodes
ibdiagnet2.db_csv	ibdiagnet internal database

An ibdiagnet run performs the following stages:

- Fabric discovery
- Duplicated GUIDs detection
- Links in INIT state and unresponsive links detection
- Counters fetch
- Error counters check
- Routing checks
- Link width and speed checks

14.3.3 Return Codes

```
0 - Success
1 - Failure (with description)
```

14.4 ibdiagnet (of ibutils) - IB Net Diagnostic

Note: This version of ibdiagnet is included in the ibutils package, and it is run by default after installing Mellanox OFED. To use this ibdiagnet version, run: `ibdiagnet`

ibdiagnet scans the fabric using directed route packets and extracts all the available information regarding its connectivity and devices. It then produces the following files in the output directory (which is defined by the -o option described below).

14.4.1 SYNOPSYS

```
ibdiagnet [-c <count>] [-v] [-r] [-o <out-dir>] [-t <topo-file>]
          [-s <sys-name>] [-i <dev-index>] [-p <port-num>] [-wt]
          [-pm] [-pc] [-P <<PM>=<Value>>] [-lw <1x|4x|12x>] [-ls <2.5|5|10>]
          [-skip <ibdiag_check/s>] [-load_db <db_file>]
```

OPTIONS:

-c <count>	Min number of packets to be sent across each link (default = 10)
-v	Enable verbose mode
-r	Provides a report of the fabric qualities
-t <topo-file>	Specifies the topology file name
-s <sys-name>	Specifies the local system name. Meaningful only if a topology file is specified
-i <dev-index>	Specifies the index of the device of the port used to connect to the IB fabric (in case of multiple devices on the local system)
-p <port-num>	Specifies the local device's port num used to connect to the IB fabric
-o <out-dir>	Specifies the directory where the output files will be placed (default = /tmp)
-lw <1x|4x|12x>	Specifies the expected link width
-ls <2.5|5|10>	Specifies the expected link speed
-pm	Dump all the fabric links, pm Counters into ibdiagnet.pm
-pc	Reset all the fabric links pmCounters
-P <PM=<Trash>>	If any of the provided pm is greater then its provided value, print it to screen
-skip <skip-option(s)>	Skip the executions of the selected checks. Skip options (one or more can be specified): dup_guids zero_guids pm logical_state part ipoib all
-wt <file-name>	Write out the discovered topology into the given file. This flag is useful if you later want to check for changes from the current state of the fabric. A directory named ibdiag_ibnl is also created by this option, and holds the IBNL files required to load this topology. To use these files you will need to set the environment variable named IBDM_IBNL_PATH to that directory. The directory is located in /tmp or in the output directory provided by the -o flag.
-load_db <file-name>	Load subnet data from the given .db file, and skip subnet discovery stage. Note: Some of the checks require actual subnet discovery, and therefore would not run when load_db is specified. These checks are: Duplicated/zero guids, link state, SMs status.
-h|--help	Prints the help page information
-V|--version	Prints the version of the tool
--vars	Prints the tool's environment variables and their values

14.4.2 Output Files

Table 8 - ibdiagnet (of ibutils) Output Files

Output File	Description
ibdiagnet.log	A dump of all the application reports generate according to the provided flags
ibdiagnet.lst	List of all the nodes, ports and links in the fabric
ibdiagnet.fdbs	A dump of the unicast forwarding tables of the fabric switches
ibdiagnet.mcfdbs	A dump of the multicast forwarding tables of the fabric switches
ibdiagnet.masks	In case of duplicate port/node Guids, these file include the map between masked Guid and real Guids
ibdiagnet.sm	List of all the SM (state and priority) in the fabric
ibdiagnet.pm	A dump of the pm Counters values, of the fabric links
ibdiagnet.pkey	A dump of the the existing partitions and their member host ports
ibdiagnet.mcg	A dump of the multicast groups, their properties and member host ports
ibdiagnet.db	A dump of the internal subnet database. This file can be loaded in later runs using the -load_db option

In addition to generating the files above, the discovery phase also checks for duplicate node/port GUIDs in the IB fabric. If such an error is detected, it is displayed on the standard output. After the discovery phase is completed, directed route packets are sent multiple times (according to the -c option) to detect possible problematic paths on which packets may be lost. Such paths are explored, and a report of the suspected bad links is displayed on the standard output.

After scanning the fabric, if the `-r` option is provided, a full report of the fabric qualities is displayed. This report includes:

- SM report
- Number of nodes and systems
- Hop-count information: maximal hop-count, an example path, and a hop-count histogram
- All CA-to-CA paths traced
- Credit loop report
- mgid-mlid-HCAs multicast group and report
- Partitions report
- IPoIB report

Note: In case the IB fabric includes only one CA, then CA-to-CA paths are not reported. Furthermore, if a topology file is provided, ibdiagnet uses the names defined in it for the output reports.

14.4.3 ERROR CODES

```
1 - Failed to fully discover the fabric
```

```
2 - Failed to parse command line options
3 - Failed to intract with IB fabric
4 - Failed to use local device or local port
5 - Failed to use Topology File
6 - Failed to load requierd Package
```

14.5 ibdiagpath - IB diagnostic path

ibdiagpath traces a path between two end-points and provides information regarding the nodes and ports traversed along the path. It utilizes device specific health queries for the different devices along the path.

The way ibdiagpath operates depends on the addressing mode used on the command line. If directed route addressing is used (-d flag), the local node is the source node and the route to the destination port is known apriori. On the other hand, if LID-route (or by-name) addressing is employed, then the source and destination ports of a route are specified by their LIDs (or by the names defined in the topology file). In this case, the actual path from the local port to the source port, and from the source port to the destination port, is defined by means of Subnet Management Linear Forwarding Table queries of the switch nodes along that path. Therefore, the path cannot be predicted as it may change.

ibdiagpath should not be supplied with contradicting local ports by the -p and -d flags (see synopsis descriptions below). In other words, when ibdiagpath is provided with the options -p and -d together, the first port in the direct route must be equal to the one specified in the "-p" option. Otherwise, an error is reported.

Note: When ibdiagpath queries for the performance counters along the path between the source and destination ports, it always traverses the LID route, even if a directed route is specified. If along the LID route one or more links are not in the ACTIVE state, ibdiagpath reports an error.

Moreover, the tool allows omitting the source node in LID-route addressing, in which case the local port on the machine running the tool is assumed to be the source.

14.5.1 SYNOPSYS

```
ibdiagpath {-n <[src-name,]dst-name>|-l <[src-lid,]dst-lid>|
            -d <p1,p2,p3,...>} [-c <count>] [-v] [-t <topo-file>]
            [-s <sys-name>] [-ic<dev-index>]c[-p <port-num>] [-o <out-dir>]
            [-lw <1x|4x|12x>] [-ls <2.5|5|10>][-pm] [-pc]
            [-P <<PM counter>=<Trash Limit>>]
```

OPTIONS:

```
-n <[src-name,]dst-name>
                    Names of the source and destination ports (as defined in the
                    topology file; source may be omitted -> local port is assumed
                    to be the source)
-l <[src-lid,]dst-lid>
                    Source and destination LIDs (source may be omitted --> the
                    local port is assumed to be the source)
```

```
-d <p1,p2,p3,...>    Directed route from the local node (which is the source) and
                     the destination node
-c <count>           The minimal number of packets to be sent across each link
                     (default = 100)
-v                   Enable verbose mode
-t <topo-file>       Specifies the topology file name
-s <sys-name>        Specifies the local system name. Meaningful only if a topology
                     file is specified
-i <dev-index>       Specifies the index of the device of the port used to connect
                     to the IB fabric (in case of multiple devices on the local sys-
                     tem)
-p <port-num>        Specifies the local device's port number used to connect to the
                     IB fabric
-o <out-dir>         Specifies the directory where the output files will be placed
                     (default = /tmp)
-lw <1x|4x|12x>      Specifies the expected link width
-ls <2.5|5|10>       Specifies the expected link speed
-pm                  Dump all the fabric links, pm Counters into ibdiagnet.pm
-pc                  Reset all the fabric links pmCounters
-P <PM=<Trash>>      If any of the provided pm is greater then its provided value,
                     print it to screen
-h|--help            Prints the help page information
-V|--version         Prints the version of the tool
--vars               Prints the tool's environment variables and their values
```

14.5.2 Output Files

Table 9 - ibdiagpath Output Files

Output File	Description
ibdiagpath.log	A dump of all the application reports generated according to the provided flags
ibdiagnet.pm	A dump of the Performance Counters values, of the fabric links

14.5.3 ERROR CODES

```
1 - The path traced is un-healthy
2 - Failed to parse command line options
3 - More then 64 hops are required for traversing the local port to the
    "Source" port and then to the "Destination" port
4 - Unable to traverse the LFT data from source to destination
5 - Failed to use Topology File
6 - Failed to load required Package
```

14.6 ibv_devices

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Lists InfiniBand devices available for use from userspace, including node GUIDs.

Synopsis

```
ibv_devices
```

Examples

1. List the names of all available InfiniBand devices.

```
> ibv_devices
    device                 node GUID
    ------              ----------------
    mthca0              0002c9000101d150
    mlx4_0              0000000000073895
```

14.7 ibv_devinfo

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Queries InfiniBand devices and prints about them information that is available for use from user-space.

Synopsis

```
ibv_devinfo [-d <device>] [-i <port>] [-l] [-v]
```

Table 10 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 10 - ibv_devinfo Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-d <device> --ib-dev=<device>	Optional	First found device	Run the command for the provided IB device 'device'

Table 10 - ibv_devinfo Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-i <port> --ib-port=<port>	Optional	All device ports	Query the specified device port <port>
-l --list	Optional	Inactive	Only list the names of InfiniBand devices
-v --verbose	Optional	Inactive	Print all available information about the InfiniBand device(s)

Examples

1. List the names of all available InfiniBand devices.

```
> ibv_devinfo -l
2 HCAs found:
        mthca0
        mlx4_0
```

2. Query the device mlx4_0 and print user-available information for its Port 2.

```
> ibv_devinfo -d mlx4_0 -i 2
hca_id: mlx4_0
        fw_ver:                         2.5.944
        node_guid:                      0000:0000:0007:3895
        sys_image_guid:                 0000:0000:0007:3898
        vendor_id:                      0x02c9
        vendor_part_id:                 25418
        hw_ver:                         0xA0
        board_id:                       MT_04A0140005
        phys_port_cnt:                  2
                port:   2
                        state:                  PORT_ACTIVE (4)
                        max_mtu:                2048 (4)
                        active_mtu:             2048 (4)
                        sm_lid:                 1
                        port_lid:               1
                        port_lmc:               0x00
```

14.8 ibstatus

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Displays basic information obtained from the local InfiniBand driver. Output includes LID, SMLID, port state, port physical state, port width and port rate.

Synopsis

```
ibstatus  [-h] [<device name>[:<port>]]*
```

Table 11 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 11 - ibstatus Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h	Optional		Print the help menu
<device>	Optional	All devices	Print information for the specified device. May specify more than one device
<port>	Optional, but requires specifying a device name	All ports of the specified device	Print information for the specified port only (of the specified device)

Examples

1. List the status of all available InfiniBand devices and their ports.

```
> ibstatus
Infiniband device 'mlx4_0' port 1 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0007:3896
         base lid:        0x3
         sm lid:          0x3
         state:           4: ACTIVE
         phys state:      5: LinkUp
         rate:            20 Gb/sec (4X DDR)

Infiniband device 'mlx4_0' port 2 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0007:3897
         base lid:        0x1
         sm lid:          0x1
         state:           4: ACTIVE
         phys state:      5: LinkUp
         rate:            20 Gb/sec (4X DDR)

Infiniband device 'mthca0' port 1 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0002:c900:0101:d151
         base lid:        0x0
         sm lid:          0x0
         state:           2: INIT
         phys state:      5: LinkUp
         rate:            10 Gb/sec (4X)

Infiniband device 'mthca0' port 2 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0002:c900:0101:d152
         base lid:        0x0
         sm lid:          0x0
         state:           2: INIT
         phys state:      5: LinkUp
         rate:            10 Gb/sec (4X)
```

2. List the status of specific ports of specific devices.

```
> ibstatus mthca0:1 mlx4_0:2
Infiniband device 'mthca0' port 1 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0002:c900:0101:d151
        base lid:        0x0
        sm lid:          0x0
        state:           2: INIT
        phys state:      5: LinkUp
        rate:            10 Gb/sec (4X)

Infiniband device 'mlx4_0' port 2 status:
        default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0007:3897
        base lid:        0x1
        sm lid:          0x1
        state:           4: ACTIVE
        phys state:      5: LinkUp
        rate:            20 Gb/sec (4X DDR)
```

14.9 ibportstate

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Enables querying the logical (link) and physical port states of an InfiniBand port. It also allows adjusting the link speed that is enabled on any InfiniBand port.

If the queried port is a *swich* port, then ibportstate can be used to

- disable, enable or reset the port
- validate the port's link width and speed against the peer port

Synopsis

```
ibportstate [-d] [-e] [-v] [-V] [-D] [-G] [-s <smlid>] \
   [-C <ca_name>] [-P <ca_port>] [-t <timeout_ms>] \
   [<dest dr_path|lid|guid>] <portnum> [<op> [<value>]]
```

Table 12 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 12 - ibportstate Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu
-d(ebug)	Optional		Raise the IB debug level. May be used several times for higher debug levels (-ddd or -d -d -d)
-e(rr_show)	Optional		Show send and receive errors (timeouts and others)
-v(erbose)	Optional		Increase verbosity level. May be used several times for additional verbosity (-vvv or -v -v -v)
-V(ersion)	Optional		Show version info
-D(irect)	Optional		Use directed path address arguments. The path is a comma separated list of out ports. Examples: ‘0’ – self port ‘0,1,2,1,4’ – out via port 1, then 2, ...
-G(uid)	Optional		Use GUID address argument. In most cases, it is the Port GUID. Example: ‘0x08f1040023’
-s <smlid>	Optional		Use <smlid> as the target lid for SM/SA queries
-C <ca_name>	Optional		Use the specified channel adapter or router
-P <ca_port>	Optional		Use the specified port
-t <timeout_ms>	Optional		Override the default timeout for the solicited MADs [msec]
<dest dr_path | lid | guid>	Optional		Destination’s directed path, LID, or GUID.
<portnum>	Optional		Destination’s port number
<op> [<value>]	Optional	query	Define the allowed port operations: enable, disable, reset, speed, and query

In case of multiple channel adapters (CAs) or multiple ports without a CA/port being specified, a port is chosen by the utility according to the following criteria:

1. The first ACTIVE port that is found.
2. If not found, the first port that is UP (physical link state is LinkUp).

Examples

1. Query the status of Port 1 of CA mlx4_0 (using ibstatus) and use its output (the LID – 3 in this case) to obtain additional link information using ibportstate.

```
>  ibstatus mlx4_0:1
Infiniband device 'mlx4_0' port 1 status:
       default gid:     fe80:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:9289:3895
        base lid:        0x3
        sm lid:          0x3
        state:           2: INIT
        phys state:      5: LinkUp
        rate:            20 Gb/sec (4X DDR)

> ibportstate -C mlx4_0 3 1 query
PortInfo:
# Port info: Lid 3 port 1
LinkState:.....................Initialize
PhysLinkState:.................LinkUp
LinkWidthSupported:............1X or 4X
LinkWidthEnabled:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:...............4X
LinkSpeedSupported:............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:..............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedActive:...............5.0 Gbps
```

2. Query the status of two channel adapters using directed paths.

```
>  ibportstate -C mlx4_0 -D 0 1
PortInfo:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkState:.....................Initialize
PhysLinkState:.................LinkUp
LinkWidthSupported:............1X or 4X
LinkWidthEnabled:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:...............4X
LinkSpeedSupported:............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:..............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedActive:...............5.0 Gbps

>  ibportstate -C mthca0 -D 0 1
PortInfo:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkState:.....................Down
PhysLinkState:.................Polling
LinkWidthSupported:............1X or 4X
LinkWidthEnabled:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:...............4X
LinkSpeedSupported:............2.5 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:..............2.5 Gbps
LinkSpeedActive:...............2.5 Gbps
```

3. Change the speed of a port.

```
# First query for current configuration
>  ibportstate -C mlx4_0 -D 0 1
PortInfo:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkState:.......................Initialize
PhysLinkState:...................LinkUp
LinkWidthSupported:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthEnabled:................1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:.................4X
LinkSpeedSupported:..............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:................2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedActive:.................5.0 Gbps

# Now change the enabled link speed
>  ibportstate -C mlx4_0 -D 0 1 speed 2
ibportstate -C mlx4_0 -D 0 1 speed 2
Initial PortInfo:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkSpeedEnabled:................2.5 Gbps

After PortInfo set:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkSpeedEnabled:................5.0 Gbps (IBA extension)

# Show the new configuration
>  ibportstate -C mlx4_0 -D 0 1
PortInfo:
# Port info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0 port 1
LinkState:.......................Initialize
PhysLinkState:...................LinkUp
LinkWidthSupported:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthEnabled:................1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:.................4X
LinkSpeedSupported:..............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:................5.0 Gbps (IBA extension)
LinkSpeedActive:.................5.0 Gbps
```

14.10 ibroute

Applicable Hardware

InfiniBand switches.

Description

Uses SMPs to display the forwarding tables—unicast (LinearForwardingTable or LFT) or multicast (MulticastForwardingTable or MFT)—for the specified switch LID and the optional lid (mlid) range. The default range is all valid entries in the range 1 to FDBTop.

Synopsis

```
ibroute [-h] [-d] [-v] [-V] [-a] [-n] [-D] [-G] [-M] [-s <smlid>] \
   [-C <ca_name>] [-P <ca_port>] [-t <timeout_ms>] \
   [<dest dr_path|lid|guid> [<startlid> [<endlid>]]]
```

Table 13 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 13 - ibportstate Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu
-d(ebug)	Optional		Raise the IB debug level. May be used several times for higher debug levels (-ddd or -d -d -d)
-a(ll)	Optional		Show all LIDs in range, including invalid entries
-v(erbose)	Optional		Increase verbosity level. May be used several times for additional verbosity (-vvv or -v -v -v)
-V(ersion)	Optional		Show version info
-a(ll)	Optional		Show all LIDs in range, including invalid entries
-n(o_dests)	Optional		Do not try to resolve destinations
-D(irect)	Optional		Use directed path address arguments. The path is a comma separated list of out ports. Examples: ‘0’ – self port ‘0,1,2,1,4’ – out via port 1, then 2, ...
-G(uid)	Optional		Use GUID address argument. In most cases, it is the Port GUID. Example: ‘0x08f1040023’
-M(ulticast)	Optional		Show multicast forwarding tables. The parameters <startlid> and <endlid> specify the MLID range.
-s <smlid>	Optional		Use <smlid> as the target LID for SM/SA queries
-C <ca_name>	Optional		Use the specified channel adapter or router
-P <ca_port>	Optional		Use the specified port

Table 13 - ibportstate Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-t <timeout_ms>	Optional		Override the default timeout for the solicited MADs [msec]
<dest dr_path | lid | guid>	Optional		Destination's directed path, LID, or GUID
<startlid>	Optional		Starting LID in an MLID range
<endlid>	Optional		Ending LID in an MLID range

Examples

1. Dump all Lids with valid out ports of the switch with Lid 2.

```
> ibroute 2
Unicast lids [0x0-0x8] of switch Lid 2 guid 0x0002c902fffff00a
(MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies):
  Lid  Out   Destination
       Port     Info
0x0002 000 : (Switch portguid 0x0002c902fffff00a: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0003 021 : (Switch portguid 0x000b8cffff004016: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0006 007 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c90300001039:
'sw137 HCA-1')
0x0007 021 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c9020025874a:
'sw157 HCA-1')
0x0008 008 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c902002582cd:
'sw136 HCA-1')
5 valid lids dumped
```

2. Dump all Lids with valid out ports of the switch with Lid 2.

```
> ibroute 2
Unicast lids [0x0-0x8] of switch Lid 2 guid 0x0002c902fffff00a
(MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies):
  Lid  Out   Destination
       Port     Info
0x0002 000 : (Switch portguid 0x0002c902fffff00a: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0003 021 : (Switch portguid 0x000b8cffff004016: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0006 007 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c90300001039:
'sw137 HCA-1')
0x0007 021 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c9020025874a:
'sw157 HCA-1')
0x0008 008 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c902002582cd:
'sw136 HCA-1')
5 valid lids dumped
```

3. Dump all Lids in the range 3 to 7 with valid out ports of the switch with Lid 2.

```
> ibroute 2 3 7
Unicast lids [0x3-0x7] of switch Lid 2 guid 0x0002c902fffff00a
(MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies):
  Lid  Out   Destination
       Port     Info
0x0003 021 : (Switch portguid 0x000b8cffff004016: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0006 007 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c90300001039:
'sw137 HCA-1')
0x0007 021 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c9020025874a:
'sw157 HCA-1')
3 valid lids dumped
```

4. Dump all Lids with valid out ports of the switch with portguid `0x000b8cffff004016`.

```
> ibroute -G 0x000b8cffff004016
Unicast lids [0x0-0x8] of switch Lid 3 guid 0x000b8cffff004016
(MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies):
  Lid  Out   Destination
       Port     Info
0x0002 023 : (Switch portguid 0x0002c902fffff00a: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0003 000 : (Switch portguid 0x000b8cffff004016: 'MT47396
Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technologies')
0x0006 023 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c90300001039:
'sw137 HCA-1')
0x0007 020 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c9020025874a:
'sw157 HCA-1')
0x0008 024 : (Channel Adapter portguid 0x0002c902002582cd:
'sw136 HCA-1')
5 valid lids dumped
```

5. Dump all non-empty mlids of switch with Lid 3.

```
> ibroute -M 3
Multicast mlids [0xc000-0xc3ff] of switch Lid 3 guid
0x000b8cffff004016 (MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technolo-
gies):
            0                   1                   2
     Ports: 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4
 MLid
0xc000                                               x
0xc001                                               x
0xc002                                               x
0xc003                                               x
0xc020                 x
0xc021                 x
0xc022                 x
0xc023                 x
0xc024                 x
0xc040                 x
0xc041                 x
0xc042                 x
12 valid mlids dumped
```

14.11 smpquery

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Provides a basic subset of standard SMP queries to query Subnet management attributes such as node info, node description, switch info, and port info.

Synopsys

```
smpquery [-h] [-d] [-e] [-v] [-D] [-G] [-s <smlid>] [-V]
         [-C <ca_name>] [-P <ca_port>] [-t <timeout_ms>]
         [--node-name-map <node-name-map>]
         <op> <dest dr_path|lid|guid> [op params]
```

Table 14 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 14 - smpquery Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu
-d(ebug)	Optional		Raise the IB debug level. May be used several times for higher debug levels (-ddd or -d -d -d)
-e(rr_show)	Optional		Show send and receive errors (timeouts and others)
-v(erbose)	Optional		Increase verbosity level. May be used several times for additional verbosity (-vvv or -v -v -v)
-D(irect)	Optional		Use directed path address arguments. The path is a comma separated list of out ports. Examples: ‘0’ – self port ‘0,1,2,1,4’ – out via port 1, then 2, ...
-G(uid)	Optional		Use GUID address argument. In most cases, it is the Port GUID. Example: ‘0x08f1040023’
-s <smlid>	Optional		Use <smlid> as the target LID for SM/SA queries
-V(ersion)	Optional		Show version info
-C <ca_name>	Optional		Use the specified channel adapter or router
-P <ca_port>	Optional		Use the specified port
-t <timeout_ms>	Optional		Override the default timeout for the solicited MADs [msec]

Table 14 - smpquery Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
<op>	Mandatory		Supported operations: nodeinfo <addr> nodedesc <addr> portinfo <addr> [<portnum>] switchinfo <addr> pkeys <addr> [<portnum>] sl2vl <addr> [<portnum>] vlarb <addr> [<portnum>] guids <addr>
<dest dr_path | lid | guid>	Optional		Destination's directed path, LID, or GUID

Examples

1. Query PortInfo by LID, with port modifier.

```
> smpquery portinfo 1 1
# Port info: Lid 1 port 1
Mkey:............................0x0000000000000000
GidPrefix:.......................0xfe80000000000000
Lid:.............................0x0001
SMLid:...........................0x0001
CapMask:.........................0x251086a
                                   IsSM
                                   IsTrapSupported
                                   IsAutomaticMigrationSupported
                                   IsSLMappingSupported
                                   IsSystemImageGUIDsupported
                                 IsCommunicatonManagementSupported
                                   IsVendorClassSupported
                                   IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported
                                   IsClientRegistrationSupported
DiagCode:........................0x0000
MkeyLeasePeriod:.................0
LocalPort:.......................1
LinkWidthEnabled:................1X or 4X
LinkWidthSupported:..............1X or 4X
LinkWidthActive:.................4X
LinkSpeedSupported:..............2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
LinkState:.......................Active
PhysLinkState:...................LinkUp
LinkDownDefState:................Polling
ProtectBits:.....................0
LMC:.............................0
LinkSpeedActive:.................5.0 Gbps
LinkSpeedEnabled:................2.5 Gbps or 5.0 Gbps
NeighborMTU:.....................2048
SMSL:............................0
VLCap:...........................VL0-7
InitType:........................0x00
VLHighLimit:.....................4
VLArbHighCap:....................8
VLArbLowCap:.....................8
InitReply:.......................0x00
MtuCap:..........................2048
VLStallCount:....................0
HoqLife:.........................31
OperVLs:.........................VL0-3
PartEnforceInb:..................0
PartEnforceOutb:.................0
```

2. Query SwitchInfo by GUID.

```
> smpquery -G switchinfo 0x000b8cffff004016
# Switch info: Lid 3
LinearFdbCap:...................49152
RandomFdbCap:...................0
McastFdbCap:....................1024
LinearFdbTop:...................8
DefPort:........................0
DefMcastPrimPort:...............0
DefMcastNotPrimPort:............0
LifeTime:.......................18
StateChange:....................0
LidsPerPort:....................0
PartEnforceCap:.................32
InboundPartEnf:.................1
OutboundPartEnf:................1
FilterRawInbound:...............1
FilterRawOutbound:..............1
EnhancedPort0:..................0
```

3. Query NodeInfo by direct route.

```
> smpquery -D nodeinfo 0
# Node info: DR path slid 65535; dlid 65535; 0
BaseVers:.......................1
ClassVers:......................1
NodeType:.......................Channel Adapter
NumPorts:.......................2
SystemGuid:.....................0x0002c9030000103b
Guid:...........................0x0002c90300001038
PortGuid:.......................0x0002c90300001039
PartCap:........................128
DevId:..........................0x634a
Revision:.......................0x000000a0
LocalPort:......................1
VendorId:.......................0x0002c9
```

14.12 perfquery

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Queries InfiniBand ports' performance and error counters. Optionally, it displays aggregated counters for all ports of a node. It can also reset counters after reading them or simply reset them.

Synopsys

```
perfquery [-h] [-d] [-G] [-a] [-l] [-r] [-C <ca_name>] [-P <ca_port>] [-R]
          [-t <timeout_ms>] [-V] [<lid|guid> [[port][reset_mask]]]
```

Table 15 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 15 - perfquery Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu
-d(ebug)	Optional		Raise the IB debug level. May be used several times for higher debug levels (-ddd or -d -d -d)
-G(uid)	Optional		Use GUID address argument. In most cases, it is the Port GUID. Example: '0x08f1040023'
-a	Optional		Apply query to all ports
-l	Optional		Loop ports
-r	Optional		Reset the counters after reading them
-C <ca_name>	Optional		Use the specified channel adapter or router
-P <ca_port>	Optional		Use the specified port
-R	Optional		Reset the counters
-t <timeout_ms>	Optional		Override the default timeout for the solicited MADs [msec]
-V(ersion)	Optional		Show version info
<lid | guid> [[port][reset_mask]]	Optional		LID or GUID

Examples

perfquery -r 32 1 # read performance counters and reset

perfquery -e -r 32 1 # read extended performance counters and reset

perfquery -R 0x20 1 # reset performance counters of port 1 only

perfquery -e -R 0x20 1 # reset extended performance counters of port 1 only

perfquery -R -a 32 # reset performance counters of all ports

perfquery -R 32 2 0x0fff # reset only error counters of port 2

perfquery -R 32 2 0xf000 # reset only non-error counters of port 2

1. Read local port's performance counters.

```
> perfquery
# Port counters: Lid 6 port 1
PortSelect:......................1
CounterSelect:...................0x1000
SymbolErrors:....................0
LinkRecovers:....................0
LinkDowned:......................0
RcvErrors:.......................0
RcvRemotePhysErrors:.............0
RcvSwRelayErrors:................0
XmtDiscards:.....................0
XmtConstraintErrors:.............0
RcvConstraintErrors:.............0
LinkIntegrityErrors:.............0
ExcBufOverrunErrors:.............0
VL15Dropped:.....................0
XmtData:.........................55178210
RcvData:.........................55174680
XmtPkts:.........................766366
RcvPkts:.........................766315
```

2. Read performance counters from LID 2, all ports.

```
> smpquery -a 2
# Port counters: Lid 2 port 255
PortSelect:......................255
CounterSelect:...................0x0100
SymbolErrors:....................65535
LinkRecovers:....................255
LinkDowned:......................16
RcvErrors:.......................657
RcvRemotePhysErrors:.............0
RcvSwRelayErrors:................70
XmtDiscards:.....................488
XmtConstraintErrors:.............0
RcvConstraintErrors:.............0
LinkIntegrityErrors:.............0
ExcBufOverrunErrors:.............0
VL15Dropped:.....................0
XmtData:.........................129840354
RcvData:.........................129529906
XmtPkts:.........................1803332
RcvPkts:.........................1799018
```

3. Read then reset performance counters from LID 2, port 1.

```
> perfquery  -r 2 1
# Port counters: Lid 2 port 1
PortSelect:......................1
CounterSelect:...................0x0100
SymbolErrors:....................0
LinkRecovers:....................0
LinkDowned:......................0
RcvErrors:.......................0
RcvRemotePhysErrors:.............0
RcvSwRelayErrors:................0
XmtDiscards:.....................3
XmtConstraintErrors:.............0
RcvConstraintErrors:.............0
LinkIntegrityErrors:.............0
ExcBufOverrunErrors:.............0
VL15Dropped:.....................0
XmtData:.........................0
RcvData:.........................0
XmtPkts:.........................0
RcvPkts:.........................0
```

14.13 ibcheckerrs

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Validates an IB port (or node) and reports errors in counters above threshold.

Check specified port (or node) and report errors that surpassed their predefined threshold. Port address is lid unless -G option is used to specify a GUID address. The predefined thresholds can be dumped using the -s option, and a user defined threshold_file (using the same format as the dump) can be specified using the -t <file> option.

Synopsis

```
ibcheckerrs [-h] [-b] [-v] [-G] [-T <threshold_file>] [-s] [-N |
   -nocolor] [-C ca_name] [-P ca_port] [-t timeout_ms] <lid|guid>
   [<port>]
```

Table 16 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 16 - ibcheckerrs Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu
-b	Optional		Print in brief mode. Reduce the output to show only if errors are present, not what they are
-v(erbose)	Optional		Increase verbosity level. May be used several times for additional verbosity (-vvv or -v -v -v)
-G(uid)	Optional		Use GUID address argument. In most cases, it is the Port GUID. Example: '0x08f1040023'
-T <threshold_file>	Optional		Use specified threshold file
-s	Optional		Show the predefined thresholds
-N | -nocolor	Optional	color mode	Use mono mode rather than color mode
-C <ca_name>	Optional		Use the specified channel adapter or router
-P <ca_port>	Optional		Use the specified port
-t <timeout_ms>	Optional		Override the default timeout for the solicited MADs [msec]
<lid | guid>	Mandatory with -G flag		Use the specified port's or node's LID/GUID (with -G option)

Table 16 - ibcheckerrs Flags and Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
[<port>]	Mandatory without -G flag		Use the specified port

Examples

1. Check aggregated node counter for LID 0x2.

```
> ibcheckerrs 2
#warn: counter SymbolErrors = 65535     (threshold 10) lid 2
port 255
#warn: counter LinkRecovers = 255       (threshold 10) lid 2
port 255
#warn: counter LinkDowned = 12  (threshold 10) lid 2 port 255
#warn: counter RcvErrors = 565  (threshold 10) lid 2 port 255
#warn: counter XmtDiscards = 441        (threshold 100) lid 2
port 255
Error check on lid 2 (MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technol-
ogies) port all:  FAILED
```

2. Check port counters for LID 2 Port 1.

```
> ibcheckerrs -v 2 1
Error check on lid 2 (MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technol-
ogies) port 1:  OK
```

3. Check the LID2 Port 1 using the specified threshold file.

```
> cat thresh1
SymbolErrors=10
LinkRecovers=10
LinkDowned=10
RcvErrors=10
RcvRemotePhysErrors=100
RcvSwRelayErrors=100
XmtDiscards=100
XmtConstraintErrors=100
RcvConstraintErrors=100
LinkIntegrityErrors=10
ExcBufOverrunErrors=10
VL15Dropped=100
> ibcheckerrs -v -T thresh1 2 1
Error check on lid 2 (MT47396 Infiniscale-III Mellanox Technol-
ogies) port 1:  OK
```

14.14 mstflint

Applicable Hardware

Mellanox InfiniBand and Ethernet devices and network adapter cards.

Description

Queries and burns a binary firmware-image file on non-volatile (Flash) memories of Mellanox InfiniBand and Ethernet network adapters. The tool requires root privileges for Flash access.

Note: If you purchased a standard Mellanox Technologies network adapter card, please download the firmware image from www.mellanox.com > Downloads > Firmware. If you purchased a non-standard card from a vendor other than Mellanox Technologies, please contact your vendor.

To run mstflint, you must know the device location on the PCI bus. See Example 1 for details.

Synopsis

```
mstflint [switches...] <command> [parameters...]
```

Table 17 lists the various switches of the utility, and Table 18 lists its commands.

Table 17 - mstflint Switches (Sheet 1 of 2)

Switch	Affected/ Relevant Commands	Description
-h		Print the help menu
-hh		Print an extended help menu
-d[evice] <device>	All	Specify the device to which the Flash is connected.
-guid <GUID>	burn, sg	GUID base value. 4 GUIDs are automatically assigned to the following values: guid -> node GUID guid+1 -> port1 guid+2 -> port2 guid+3 -> system image GUID. Note: Port2 guid will be assigned even for a single port HCA; the HCA ignores this value.
-guids <GUIDs...>	burn, sg	4 GUIDs must be specified here. The specified GUIDs are assigned the following values, repectively: node, port1, port2 and system image GUID. Note: Port2 guid must be specified even for a single port HCA; the HCA ignores this value. It can be set to 0x0.
-mac <MAC>	burn, sg	MAC address base value. Two MACs are automatically assigned to the following values: mac -> port1 mac+1 -> port2 Note: This switch is applicable only for Mellanox Technologies Ethernet products.
-macs <MACs...>	burn, sg	Two MACs must be specified here. The specified MACs are assigned to port1 and port2, repectively. Note: This switch is applicable only for Mellanox Technologies Ethernet products.
-blank_guids	burn	Burn the image with blank GUIDs and MACs (where applicable). These values can be set later using the sg command – see Table 18 below.
-clear_semaphore	No commands allowed	Force clear the Flash semaphore on the device. No command is allowed when this switch is used. Warning: May result in system instability or Flash corruption if the device or another application is currently using the Flash.
-i[mage] <image>	burn, verify	Binary image file
-qq	burn, query	Run a quick query. When specified, mstflint will not perform full image integrity checks during the query operation. This may shorten execution time when running over slow interfaces (e.g., I2C, MTUSB-1).
-nofs	burn	Burn image in a non-failsafe manner
-skip_is	burn	Allow burning the firmware image without updating the invariant sector. This is to ensure failsafe burning even when an invariant sector difference is detected.

Table 17 - mstflint Switches (Sheet 2 of 2)

Switch	Affected/ Relevant Commands	Description
-byte_mode	burn, write	Shift address when accessing Flash internal registers. May be required for burn/write commands when accessing certain Flash types.
-s[ilent]	burn	Do not print burn progress messages
-y[es]	All	Non-interactive mode: Assume the answer is "yes" to all questions.
-no	All	Non-interactive mode: Assume the answer is "no" to all questions.
-vsd <string>	burn	Write this string of up to 208 characters to VSD upon a burn command.
-use_image_ps	burn	Burn vsd as it appears in the given image - do not keep existing VSD on Flash.
-dual_image	burn	Make the burn process burn two images on Flash. The current default fail-safe burn process burns a single image (in alternating locations).
-v		Print version info

Table 18 - mstflint Commands

Command	Description
b[urn]	Burn Flash
q[uery]	Query miscellaneous Flash/firmware characteristics
v[erify]	Verify the entire Flash
bb	Burn Block: Burn the given image as is, without running any checks
sg	Set GUIDs
ri <out-file>	Read the firmware image on the Flash into the specified file
dc <out-file>	Dump Configuration: Print a firmware configuration file for the given image to the specified output file
e[rase] <addr>	Erase sector
rw <addr>	Read one DWORD from Flash
ww <addr> < data>	Write one DWORD to Flash
wwne <addr>	Write one DWORD to Flash without sector erase
wbne <addr> <size> <data...>	Write a data block to Flash without sector erase
rb <addr> <size> [out-file]	Read a data block from Flash
swreset	SW reset the target InfniScale IV device. This command is supported only in the In-Band access method.

Possible command return values are:

0 - successful completion

1 - error has occurred

7 - the burn command was aborted because firmware is current

Examples

1. Find Mellanox Technologies's ConnectX® VPI cards with PCI Express running at 2.5GT/s and InfiniBand ports at DDR / or Ethernet ports at 10GigE.

```
> /sbin/lspci -d 15b3:634a
04:00.0 InfiniBand: Mellanox Technologies MT25418 [ConnectX IB
DDR, PCIe 2.0 2.5GT/s] (rev a0).
```

In the example above, 15b3 is Mellanox Technologies's vendor number (in hexadecimal), and 634a is the device's PCI Device ID (in hexadecimal). The number string 04:00.0 identifies the device in the form bus:dev.fn.

Note: The PCI Device IDs of Mellanox Technologies' devices can be obtained from the PCI ID Repository Website at http://pci-ids.ucw.cz/read/PC/15b3.

2. Verify the ConnectX firmware using its ID (using the results of the example above).

```
> mstflint -d 04:00.0 v
     ConnectX failsafe image. Start address: 80000. Chunk size
80000:

NOTE: The addresses below are contiguous logical addresses.
Physical addresses on flash may be different, based on the
image start address and chunk size

     /0x00000038-0x000010db (0x0010a4)/ (BOOT2) - OK
     /0x000010dc-0x00004947 (0x00386c)/ (BOOT2) - OK
     /0x00004948-0x000052c7 (0x000980)/ (Configuration) - OK
     /0x000052c8-0x0000530b (0x000044)/ (GUID) - OK
     /0x0000530c-0x0000542f (0x000124)/ (Image Info) - OK
     /0x00005430-0x0000634f (0x000f20)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x00006350-0x0000f29b (0x008f4c)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x0000f29c-0x0004749b (0x038200)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x0004749c-0x0005913f (0x011ca4)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x00059140-0x0007a123 (0x020fe4)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x0007a124-0x0007bdff (0x001cdc)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x0007be00-0x0007eb97 (0x002d98)/ (DDR) - OK
     /0x0007eb98-0x0007f0af (0x000518)/ (Configuration) - OK
     /0x0007f0b0-0x0007f0fb (0x00004c)/ (Jump addresses) - OK
     /0x0007f0fc-0x0007f2a7 (0x0001ac)/ (FW Configuration) - OK

FW image verification succeeded. Image is bootable.
```

14.15 ibv_asyncwatch

Applicable Hardware

All InfiniBand devices.

Description

Display asynchronous events forwarded to userspace for an InfiniBand device.

Synopsis

```
ibv_asyncwatch
```

Examples

1. Display asynchronous events.

```
> ibv_asyncwatch
mlx4_0: async event FD 4
```

14.16 ibdump

Applicable Hardware

Mellanox ConnectX® / ConnectX®-2 adapter devices.

Description

Dump InfiniBand traffic that flows to and from Mellanox Technologies ConnectX/ConnectX-2 adapters InfiniBand ports. The dump file can be loaded by the Wireshark tool for graphical traffic analysis.

The following describes a work flow for local HCA (adapter) sniffing:

- Run ibdump with the desired options
- Run the application that you wish its traffic to be analyzed
- Stop ibdump (CTRL-c) or wait for the data buffer to fill (in --mem-mode)
- Open Wireshark and load the generated file

How to Get Wireshark:

Download the current release from www.wireshark.org for a Linux or Windows environment. See the ibdump_release_notes.txt file for more details.

Note: Although ibdump is a Linux application, the generated .pcap file may be analyzed on either operating system.

Synopsis

```
ibdump [options]
```

Table 19 lists the various flags of the command.

Table 19 - ibdump Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-h(help)	Optional		Print the help menu

Table 19 - ibdump Options

Flag	Optional / Mandatory	Default (If Not Specified)	Description
-d, --ib-dev=<dev>	Optional	First device found	Use IB device <dev>
-i, --ib-port=<port>	Optional	1	Use port <port> of IB device
-o, --output=<file>	Optional	sniffer.pcap	Dump file name
-b, --max-burst=<log2 burst>	Optional	12 - 4096 entries	log2 of the maximal burst size that can be captured with no packet loss. Each entry takes ~ MTU bytes of memory
--mem-mode <size>	Optional		When specified, packets are written to the dump file only after the capture is stopped. It is faster than the default mode (less chance for packet loss), but it uses more memory. In this mode, ibdump stops after <size> bytes are captured.
--decap	Optional		Decapsulate port mirroring headers. Should be used when capturing RSPAN traffic.

Examples

1. Run ibdump.

```
> ibdump
 ------------------------------------------------
 IB device                      : "mlx4_0"
 IB port                        : 1
 Dump file                      : sniffer.pcap
 Sniffer WQEs (max burst size)  : 4096
 ------------------------------------------------

Initiating resources ...
searching for IB devices in host
Port active_mtu=2048
MR was registered with addr=0x60d850, lkey=0x28042601,
rkey=0x28042601, flags=0x1
QP was created, QP number=0x4004a

Ready to capture (Press ^c to stop):
```

Appendix A: Mellanox FlexBoot

A.1 Overview

Mellanox FlexBoot is a multiprotocol remote boot technology. FlexBoot supports remote boot over InfiniBand (BoIB) and Boot over Ethernet (BoE).

Using Mellanox Virtual Protocol Interconnect (VPI) technologies available in ConnectX® adapters, FlexBoot gives IT Managers' the choice to boot from a remote storage target (iSCSI target) or a LAN target (Ethernet Remote Boot Server) using a single ROM image on Mellanox ConnectX products.

FlexBoot is based on the open source project Etherboot/gPXE available at http://www.etherboot.org.

FlexBoot first initializes the adapter device, senses the port protocol – Ethernet or InfiniBand, and brings up the port. Then it connects to a DHCP server to obtain its assigned IP address and network parameters, and also to obtain the source location of the kernel/OS to boot from. The DHCP server instructs FlexBoot to access the kernel/OS through a TFTP server, an iSCSI target, or some other service.

For an InfiniBand port, Mellanox FlexBoot implements a network driver with IP over IB acting as the transport layer. IP over IB is part of the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* software package (see www.mellanox.com > Products > InfiniBand/VPI SW/Drivers).

The binary code is exported by the device as an expansion ROM image.

A.1.1 Supported Mellanox Adapter Devices and Firmware

The package supports all ConnectX® / ConnectX®-2 network adapter devices and cards. It also supports the InfiniHost® III Ex and InfiniHost® Lx adapter devices and cards.

Specifically, adapter products responding to the following PCI Device IDs are supported:

ConnectX / Connectx-2 devices:

- Decimal 25408 (Hexadecimal: 6340)
- Decimal 25418 (Hexadecimal: 634a)
- Decimal 26418 (Hexadecimal: 6732)
- Decimal 26428 (Hexadecimal: 673c)
- Decimal 26438 (Hexadecimal: 6746)
- Decimal 26488 (Hexadecimal: 6778)

InfiniHost® III Ex devices:

- Decimal 25218 (Hexadecimal: 6282)

InfiniHost® III Lx devices:

- Decimal 25204 (Hexadecimal: 6274)

A.1.2 Tested Platforms

See the Mellanox FlexBoot Release Notes (`FlexBoot_release_notes.txt`).

A.1.3 FlexBoot in Mellanox OFED

The FlexBoot binary files are provided as part of *Mellaox OFED for Linux*. The following binary files are included:

1. A PXE ROM image file for each of the supported Mellanox network adapter devices. Specifically, the following images are included:

   ConnectX / ConnectX-2 images:

   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_25408_ROM-<version>.rom
   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_25418_ROM-<version>.rom
   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_26418_ROM-<version>.rom
   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_26428_ROM-<version>.rom
   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_26438_ROM-<version>.rom
   - ConnectX_FlexBoot_26488_ROM-<version>.rom

   where the number after the "ConnectX_FlexBoot_" prefix indicates the corresponding PCI Device ID of the ConnectX / ConnectX-2 device.

   InfiniHost III Ex images:

   - IHOST3EX_PORT1_ROM-<version>.rom (IB Port 1)
   - IHOST3EX_PORT2_ROM-<version>.rom (IB Port 2)

   InfiniHost III Lx image:

   - IHOST3LX_ROM-<version>.rom

2. Additional documents under `docs/`:
   - `dhcpd.conf` – sample DHCP configuration file
   - `dhcp.patch` – patch file for DHCP v3.1.3

A.2 Burning the Expansion ROM Image

A.2.1 Burning the Image on ConnectX® / ConnectX®-2

Note: This section is valid for ConnectX® / ConnectX®-2 devices with firmware versions 2.7.000 or later. For earlier firmware versions, please follow the instructions in Section A.2.2 on page 189.

Prerequisites

1. Expansion ROM Image

   The expansion ROM images are provided as part of the Mellanox FlexBoot package and are listed in the release notes file `FlexBoot_release_notes.txt`.

2. Firmware Burning Tools

   You need to install the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package (version 2.6.0 or later) in order to burn the PXE ROM image. To download MFT, see Firmware Tools under www.mellanox.com > Downloads.

Image Burning Procedure

To burn the composite image, perform the following steps:

1. Obtain the MST device name. Run:

   ```
   # mst start
   # mst status
   ```

   The device name will be of the form: `mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}`.[1]

2. Create and burn the composite image. Run:

   ```
   flint -dev <mst device name> brom <expansion ROM image>
   ```

   Example on Linux:

   ```
   flint -dev /dev/mst/mt26428_pci_cr0 brom ConnectX_26428_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
   ```

   Example on Windows:

   ```
   flint -dev mt26428_pci_cr0 brom ConnectX_26428_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
   ```

A.2.2 Burning the Image on InfiniHost III Ex/Lx Products

Prerequisites

1. Firmware packages

   The appropriate firmware .mlx packages (ConnectX: fw-25408[2], InfiniHost III Ex: fw-25208, and/or InfiniHost III Lx: fw-25204) can be downloaded from Mellanox Technologies' Web site – see www.mellanox.com > Downloads > Firmware > Customized Firmware.

2. Firmware Configuration (.ini) Files

1. Depending on the OS, the device name may be superceded with a prefix.
2. Relevant only if your ConnectX EN devices are currently burnt with a firmware version earlier than 2.7.000.

For standard Mellanox products, .ini files are included in the firmware .mlx packages. For help in identifying the correct .ini file of your adapter hardware, please refer to *MFT User's Manual*, which is provided in *Mellanox OFED for Linux.*

3. Expansion ROM Image

   The expansion ROM images are provided as part of the SW package and are listed in the release notes file: `FlexBoot_release_notes.txt`.

4. Firmware Burning Tools

   You need to install the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package (version 2.6.0 or later) in order to burn the PXE ROM image. To download MFT, see *Firmware Tools* under www.mellanox.com > Downloads.

   Specifically, you will be using the `mlxburn` tool to create and burn a composite image (from an adapter device's firmware and the PXE ROM image) onto the same Flash device of the adapter.

Image Burning Procedure

To burn the composite image, perform the following steps:

1. Obtain the MST device name. Run:

```
# mst start
# mst status
```

   The device name will be of the form: `mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}`.[1]

2. Create and burn the composite image. Run:

```
mlxburn -d <mst device name> -fw <FW .mlx file> -conf <.ini file> \
       -exp_rom <expansion ROM image>
```

   Example on Linux:

```
mlxburn -dev /dev/mst/mt25418_pci_cr0 -fw fw-25408-X_X_XXX.mlx \
       -conf MHGH28-XTC.ini -exp_rom ConnectX_IB_25418_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
```

   Example on Windows:

```
mlxburn -dev mt25418_pci_cr0 -fw fw-25408-X_X_XXX.mlx \
       -conf MHGH28-XTC.ini -exp_rom ConnectX_IB_25418_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
```

A.2.3 Preparing the DHCP Server in Linux Environment

The DHCP server plays a major role in the boot process by assigning IP addresses for FlexBoot clients and instructing the clients where to boot from. FlexBoot requires that the DHCP server run on a machine which supports IP over IB.

A.2.4 Configuring the DHCP Server

A.2.4.1 For ConnectX Family Devices

When a FlexBoot client boots, it sends the DHCP server various information, including its DHCP client identifier. This identifier is used to distinguish between the various DHCP sessions. The

1. Depending on the OS, the device name may be superceded by a prefix.

value of the client identifier is composed of a prefix — ff:00:00:00:00:00:02:00:00:02:c9:00 — and an 8-byte port GUID (all separated by colons and represented in hexadecimal digits).

Extracting the Port GUID – Method I

To obtain the port GUID, run the following commands:

Note: The following MFT commands assume that the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package has been installed on the client machine.

```
host1# mst start
host1# mst status
```

The device name will be of the form: /dev/mst/mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}. Use this device name to obtain the Port GUID via the following query command:

```
flint -d <MST_DEVICE_NAME> q
```

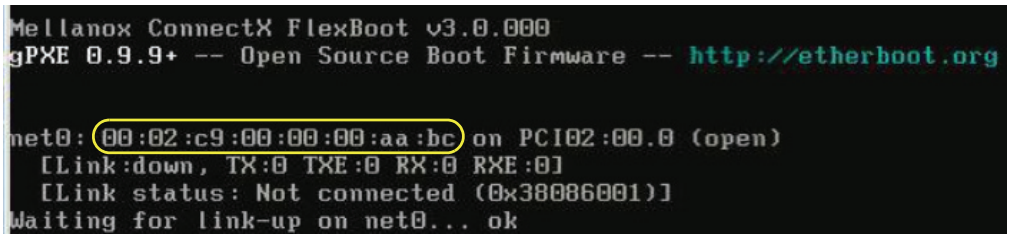
Example with ConnectX-2 QDR (MHJH29B-XTR Dual 4X IB QDR Port, PCIe Gen2 x8, Tall Bracket, RoHS-R6 HCA Card, CX4 Connectors) as the adapter device:

```
host1# flint -d /dev/mst/mt26428_pci_cr0 q
Image type:      ConnectX
FW Version:      2.7.000
Device ID:       26428
Chip Revision:   B0
Description:     Node             Port1            Port2            Sys image
GUIDs:         0002c90300001038  0002c90300001039  0002c9030000103a  0002c9030000103b
MACs:                              0002c9001039     0002c900103a
Board ID:        n/a (MT_0D20110009)
VSD:             n/a
PSID:            MT_0D20110009
```

Assuming that FlexBoot is connected via Port 1, then the Port GUID is 00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:39.

Extracting the Port GUID – Method II

An alternative method for obtaining the port GUID involves booting the client machine via FlexBoot. This requires having a Subnet Manager running on one of the machines in the InfiniBand subnet. The 8 bytes can be captured from the boot session as shown in the figure below.


Mellanox ConnectX FlexBoot v3.0.000
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:00:00:00:aa:bc on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:down, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
[Link status: Not connected (0x38086001)]
Waiting for link-up on net0... ok

Placing Client Identifiers in /etc/dhcpd.conf

The following is an excerpt of a `/etc/dhcpd.conf` example file showing the format of representing a client machine for the DHCP server.

```
host host1 {
    next-server 11.4.3.7;
    filename "pxelinux.0";
    fixed-address 11.4.3.130;
    option dhcp-client-identifier =
         ff:00:00:00:00:00:02:00:00:02:c9:00:00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:39;
}
```

A.2.4.2 For InfiniHost III Family Devices (PCI Device IDs: 25204, 25218)

When a FlexBoot client boots, it sends the DHCP server various information, including its DHCP client identifier. This identifier is used to distinguish between the various DHCP sessions.

The value of the client identifier is composed of 21 bytes (separated by colons) having the following components:

```
20:<QP Number - 4 bytes>:<GID - 16 bytes>
```

Note: Bytes are represented as two-hexadecimal digits.

Extracting the Client Identifier – Method I

The following steps describe one method for extracting the client identifier:

Step 1. QP Number equals 00:55:04:01 for InfiniHost III Ex and InfiniHost III Lx HCAs.

Step 2. GID is composed of an 8-byte subnet prefix and an 8-byte Port GUID. The subnet prefix is fixed for the supported Mellanox HCAs, and is equal to fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00. The next steps explains how to obtain the Port GUID.

Step 3. To obtain the Port GUID, run the following commands:

Note The following MFT commands assume that the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package has been installed on the client machine.

```
host1# mst start
```

```
host1# mst status
```

The device name will be of the form: /dev/mst/mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}. Use this device name to obtain the Port GUID via a query command.

```
flint -d <MST_DEVICE_NAME> q
```

Example with InfiniHost III Ex as the HCA device:

```
host1# flint -d /dev/mst/mt25218_pci_cr0 q
Image type:      Failsafe
FW Version:      5.3.0
Rom Info:        type=GPXE version=1.0.0 devid=25218 port=2
I.S. Version:    1
Device ID:       25218
Chip Revision:   A0
Description:  Node          Port1           Port2          Sys image
GUIDs:     0002c90200231390 0002c90200231391 0002c90200231392 0002c90200231393
Board ID:         (MT_0370110001)
VSD:
PSID:            MT_0370110001
```

Assuming that FlexBoot is connected via Port 2, then the Port GUID is 00:02:c9:02:00:23:13:92.

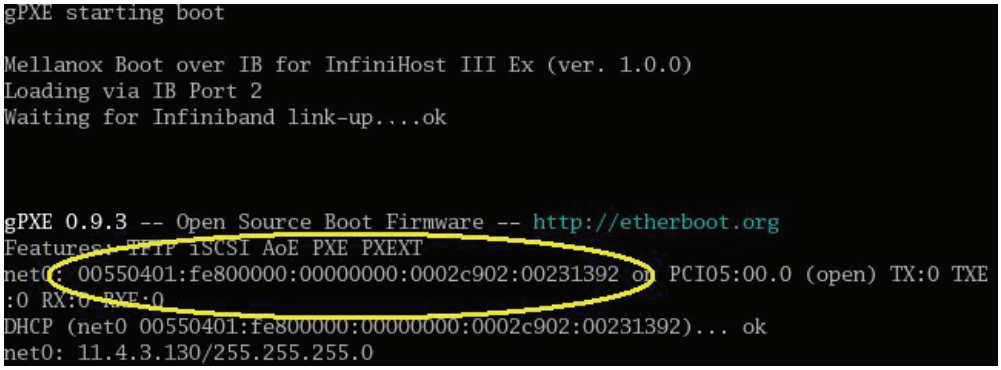
Step 4. The resulting client identifier is the concatenation, from left to right, of 20, the QP_Number, the subnet prefix, and the Port GUID.

In the example above this yields the following DHCP client identifier:

```
20:00:55:04:01:fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:02:c9:02:00:23:13:92
```

Extracting the Client Identifier – Method II

An alternative method for obtaining the 20 bytes of QP Number and GID involves booting the client machine via FlexBoot. This requires having a Subnet Manager running on one of the machines in the InfiniBand subnet. The 20 bytes can be captured from the boot session as shown in the figure below.


gPXE starting boot
Mellanox Boot over IB for InfiniHost III Ex (ver. 1.0.0)
Loading via IB Port 2
Waiting for Infiniband link-up....ok
gPXE 0.9.3 -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
Features: HTTP iSCSI AoE PXE PXEXT
net0: 00550401:fe800000:00000000:0002c902:00231392 on PCI05:00.0 (open) TX:0 TXE
:0 RX:0 RXE:0
DHCP (net0 00550401:fe800000:00000000:0002c902:00231392)... ok
net0: 11.4.3.130/255.255.255.0

Concatenate the byte ‘20’ to the left of the captured 20 bytes, then separate every byte (two hexadecimal digits) with a colon. You should obtain the same result shown in Step 4 above.

Placing Client Identifiers in /etc/dhcpd.conf

The following is an excerpt of a `/etc/dhcpd.conf` example file showing the format of representing a client machine for the DHCP server.

```
host host1 {
    next-server 11.4.3.7;
    filename "pxelinux.0";
    fixed-address 11.4.3.130;
    option dhcp-client-identifier = \
    20:00:55:04:01:fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00:02:c9:02:00:23:13:92;
}
```

A.3 Subnet Manager – OpenSM

Note: This section applies to ports configured as InfiniBand only.

FlexBoot requires a Subnet Manager to be running on one of the machines in the IB network. OpenSM is part of the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* software package and can be used to accomplish this. Note that OpenSM may be run on the same host running the DHCP server but it is not mandatory. For details on OpenSM, see “OpenSM – Subnet Manager” on page 111.

A.4 TFTP Server

When you set the ‘filename’ parameter in your DHCP configuration file to a non-empty filename, the client will ask for this file to be passed through TFTP. For this reason you need to install a TFTP server.

A.5 BIOS Configuration

The expansion ROM image presents itself to the BIOS as a boot device. As a result, the BIOS will add to the list of boot devices “MLNX FlexBoot <ver>” for a ConnectX device or “gPXE” for an InfiniHost III device. The priority of this list can be modified through BIOS setup.

A.6 Operation

A.6.1 Prerequisites

- Make sure that your client is connected to the server(s)
- The FlexBoot image is already programmed on the adapter card – see Section A.2
- Start the Subnet Manager as described in Section A.3
- The DHCP server should be configured and started (see Section 4.3.1, “IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP,” on page 51

- Configure and start at least one of the services iSCSI Target (see Section A.9) and/or TFTP (see Section A.4)

A.6.2 Starting Boot

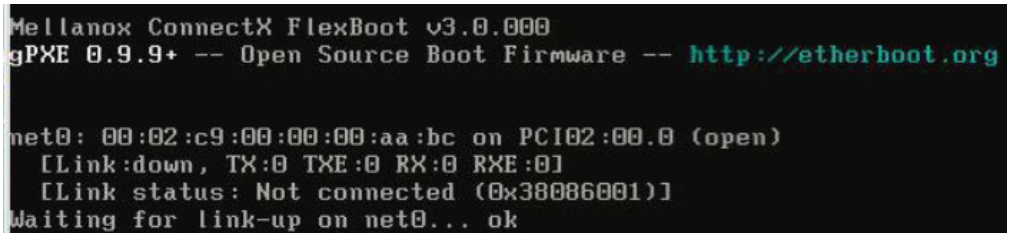
Boot the client machine and enter BIOS setup to configure "MLNX FlexBoot" (for ConnectX family) or "gPXE" (for InfiniHost III family) to be the first on the boot device priority list – see Section A.5.

Note: On dual-port network adapters, the client first attempts to boot from Port 1. If this fails, it switches to boot from Port 2. Note also that the driver waits up to 90 seconds for each port to come up.

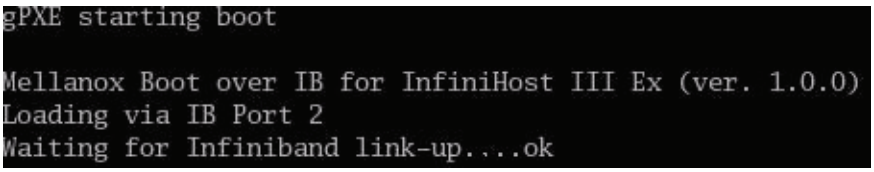
If MLNX FlexBoot/gPXE was selected through BIOS setup, the client will boot from FlexBoot. The client will display FlexBoot attributes, sense the port protocol – Ethernet or InfiniBand. In case of an InfiniBand port, the client will also wait for port configuration by the Subnet Manager.

Note: In case sensing the port protocol fails, the port will be configured as an InfiniBand port.

For ConnectX:

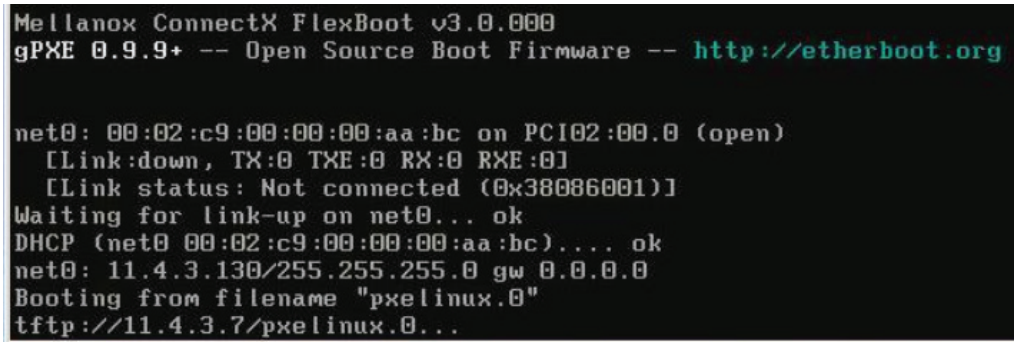

Mellanox ConnectX FlexBoot v3.0.000
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:00:00:00:aa:bc on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:down, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
[Link status: Not connected (0x38086001)]
Waiting for link-up on net0... ok

For InfiniHost III Ex:

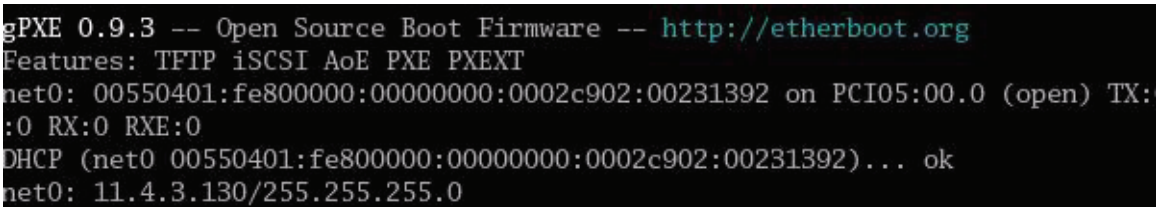

gPXE starting boot
Mellanox Boot over IB for InfiniHost III Ex (ver. 1.0.0)
Loading via IB Port 2
Waiting for Infiniband link-up....ok

After configuring the IB/ETH port, the client attempts connecting to the DHCP server to obtain an IP address and the source location of the kernel/OS to boot from.

For ConnectX (InfiniBand):


Mellanox ConnectX FlexBoot v3.0.000
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:00:00:00:aa:bc on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:down, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
[Link status: Not connected (0x38086001)]
Waiting for link-up on net0... ok
DHCP (net0 00:02:c9:00:00:00:aa:bc).... ok
net0: 11.4.3.130/255.255.255.0 gw 0.0.0.0
Booting from filename "pxelinux.0"
tftp://11.4.3.7/pxelinux.0...

For InfiniHost III Ex:


gPXE 0.9.3 -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
Features: TFTP iSCSI AoE PXE PXEXT
net0: 00550401:fe800000:00000000:0002c902:00231392 on PCI05:00.0 (open) TX:
:0 RX:0 RXE:0
DHCP (net0 00550401:fe800000:00000000:0002c902:00231392)... ok
net0: 11.4.3.130/255.255.255.0

Next, FlexBoot attempts to boot as directed by the DHCP server.

A.7 Command Line Interface (CLI)

A.7.1 Invoking the CLI

When the boot process begins, the computer starts its Power On Self Test (POST) sequence. Shortly after completion of the POST, the user will be prompted to press CTRL-B to invoke Mellanox FlexBoot CLI. The user has few seconds to press CTRL-B before the message disappears (see figure).

Mellanox ConnectX FlexBoot v3.0.000
gPXE (http://etherboot.org) - 02:00.0 CB80 PCI3.00 PnP BBS PMM0040@20 CB80
Press Ctrl-B to configure MLNX FlexBoot 3.0.000 (PCI 02:00.0)..._

Alternatively, you may skip invoking CLI right after POST and invoke it, instead, right after FlexBoot *starts* booting.

Once the CLI is invoked, you will see the following prompt:

```
gPXE>
```

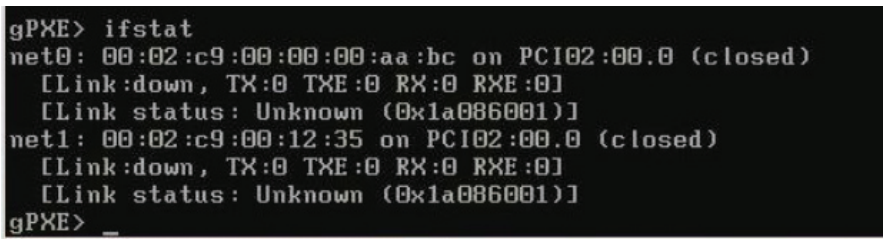
A.7.2 Operation

The CLI resembles a Linux shell, where the user can run commands to configure and manage one or more PXE port network interfaces. Each port is assigned a network interface called **net*i***, where ***i*** is 0, 1, 2,...<#of interface>. Some commands are general and are applied to all network interfaces. Other commands are port specific, therefore the relevant network interface is specified in the command.

A.7.3 Command Reference

A.7.3.1 ifstat

Displays the available network interfaces (in a similar manner to Linux's ifconfig).


gPXE> ifstat
net0: 00:02:c9:00:00:00:aa:bc on PCI02:00.0 (closed)
[Link:down, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
[Link status: Unknown (0x1a086001)]
net1: 00:02:c9:00:12:35 on PCI02:00.0 (closed)
[Link:down, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
[Link status: Unknown (0x1a086001)]
gPXE> _

A.7.3.2 ifopen

Opens the network interface net<x>. The list of network interfaces is available via the ifstat command.

Example:

```
gPXE> ifopen net1
```

A.7.3.3 ifclose

Closes the network interface net<x>. The list of network interfaces is available via the ifstat command.

Example:

```
gPXE> ifclose net1
```

A.7.3.4 autoboot

Starts the boot process from the device(s).

A.7.3.5 sanboot

Starts the boot process of an iSCSI target.

Example:

```
gPXE> sanboot iscsi:11.4.3.7::::iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.11:iscsiboot
```

A.7.3.6 echo

Echoes an environment variable.

Example:

```
gPXE> echo ${root-path}
```

A.7.3.7 dhcp

A network interface attempts to open the network interface and then tries to connect to and communicate with the DHCP server to obtain the IP address and filepath from which the boot will occur.

Example:

```
gPXE> dhcp net1
```

A.7.3.8 help

Displays the available list of commands.

A.7.3.9 exit

Exits from the command line interface.

A.8 Diskless Machines

Mellanox FlexBoot supports booting diskless machines. To enable using an IB/ETH driver, the (remote) kernel or `initrd` image must include and be configured to load that driver.

This can be achieved either by compiling the HCA driver into the kernel, or by adding the device driver module into the `initrd` image and loading it.

A.8.1 Case I: InfiniBand Ports

The IB driver requires loading the following modules in the specified order (see Section A.8.1.1 for an example):

- ib_addr.ko
- ib_core.ko
- ib_mad.ko
- ib_sa.ko
- ib_cm.ko
- ib_uverbs.ko
- ib_ucm.ko
- ib_umad.ko
- iw_cm.ko
- rdma_cm.ko
- rdma_ucm.ko
- mlx4_core.ko
- mlx4_ib.ko
- ib_mthca.ko
- ipoib_helper.ko – this module is *not* required for all OS kernels. Please check the release notes.
- ib_ipoib.ko

A.8.1.1 Example: Adding an IB Driver to initrd (Linux)

Prerequisites

1. The FlexBoot image is already programmed on the HCA card.
2. The DHCP server is installed and configured as described in Section 4.3.1, "IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP", and is connected to the client machine.
3. An `initrd` file.
4. To add an IB driver into `initrd`, you need to copy the IB modules to the diskless image. Your machine needs to be pre-installed with a *Mellanox OFED for Linux* ISO image that is appropriate for the kernel version the diskless image will run.

Adding the IB Driver to the initrd File

Warning! The following procedure modifies critical files used in the boot procedure. It must be executed by users with expertise in the boot process. Improper application of this procedure may prevent the diskless machine from booting.

Step 1. Back up your current `initrd` file.

Step 2. Make a new working directory and change to it.

```
host1$ mkdir /tmp/initrd_ib
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_ib
```

Step 3. Normally, the `initrd` image is zipped. Extract it using the following command:

```
host1$ gzip -dc <initrd image> | cpio -id
```

The initrd files should now be found under /tmp/initrd_ib

Step 4. Create a directory for the InfiniBand modules and copy them.

```
host1$ mkdir -p /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$ cd /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_addr.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_core.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_mad.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_sa.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_cm.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_uverbs.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_ucm.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/ib_umad.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/iw_cm.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/rdma_cm.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/core/rdma_ucm.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp net/mlx4/mlx4_core.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/hw/mlx4/mlx4_ib.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/hw/mthca/ib_mthca.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/ulp/ipoib/ipoib_helper.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
host1$cp infiniband/ulp/ipoib/ib_ipoib.ko /tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules/ib
```

Step 5. IB requires loading an IPv6 module. If you do not have it in your `initrd`, please add it using the following command:

```
host1$ cp /lib/modules/`uname -r`/kernel/net/ipv6/ipv6.ko \
/tmp/initrd_ib/lib/modules
```

Step 6. To load the modules, you need the `insmod` executable. If you do not have it in your `initrd`, please add it using the following command:

```
host1$ cp /sbin/insmod /tmp/initrd_ib/sbin/
```

Step 7. If you plan to give your IB device a static IP address, then copy `ifconfig`. Otherwise, skip this step.

```
host1$ cp /sbin/ifconfig /tmp/initrd_ib/sbin
```

Step 8. If you plan to obtain an IP address for the IB device through DHCP, then you need to copy the DHCP client which was compiled specifically to support IB;
Otherwise, skip this step.

To continue with this step, DHCP client v3.1.3 needs to be already installed on the machine you are working with.

Copy the DHCP client v3.1.3 file and all the relevant files as described below.

```
host1# cp <path to DHCP client v3.1.3>/dhclient /tmp/initrd_ib/sbin
host1# cp <path to DHCP client v3.1.3>/dhclient-script /tmp/initrd_ib/sbin
host1# mkdir -p /tmp/initrd_ib/var/state/dhcp
host1# touch /tmp/initrd_ib/var/state/dhcp/dhclient.leases
host1# cp /bin/uname /tmp/initrd_ib/bin
host1# cp /usr/bin/expr /tmp/initrd_ib/bin
host1# cp /sbin/ifconfig /tmp/initrd_ib/bin
host1# cp /bin/hostname /tmp/initrd_ib/bin
```

Create a configuration file for the DHCP client (as described in Section 4.3.1) and place it under `/tmp/initrd_ib/sbin`. The following is an example of such a file (called `dclient.conf`):

dhclient.conf:

```
# The value indicates a hexadecimal number

# For a ConnectX device
interface "ib0" {
send dhcp-client-identifier
                        ff:00:00:00:00:00:02:00:00:02:c9:00:00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:39;
}

# For an InfiniHost III Ex device
interface "ib1" {
send dhcp-client-identifier \
                       20:00:55:04:01:fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:02:c9:02:00:23:13:92;
}
```

Step 9. Now you can add the commands for loading the copied modules into the file `init`. Edit the file `/tmp/initrd_ib/init` and add the following lines at the point you wish the IB driver to be loaded.

Warning! The order of the following commands (for loading modules) is critical.

```
echo "loading ipv6"
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ipv6.ko
echo "loading IB driver"
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_addr.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_core.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_mad.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_sa.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_cm.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_uverbs.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_ucm.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_umad.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/iw_cm.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/rdma_cm.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/rdma_ucm.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/mlx4_core.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/mlx4_ib.ko
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_mthca.ko
```

Note: The following command (loading ipoib_helper.ko) is *not* required for all OS kernels. Please check the release notes.

```
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ipoib_helper.ko
```

```
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_ipoib.ko
```

Note: In case of interoperability issues between iSCSI and Large Receive Offload (LRO), change the last command above as follows to disable LRO:

```
/sbin/insmod /lib/modules/ib/ib_ipoib.ko lro=0
```

Step 10. Now you can assign an IP address to your IB device by adding a call to `ifconfig` or to the DHCP client in the `init` file after loading the modules. If you wish to use the DHCP client, then you need to add a call to the DHCP client in the `init` file after loading the IB modules. For example:

```
/sbin/dhclient -cf /sbin/dhclient.conf ib1
```

Step 11. Save the `init` file.

Step 12. Close `initrd`.

```
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_ib
host1$ find ./ | cpio -H newc -o > /tmp/new_initrd_ib.img
host1$ gzip /tmp/new_init_ib.img
```

Step 13. At this stage, the modified `initrd` (including the IB driver) is ready and located at `/tmp/new_init_ib.img.gz`. Copy it to the original `initrd` location and rename it properly.

A.8.2 Case II: Ethernet Ports

The Ethernet driver requires loading the following modules in the specified order – see the example below:

- mlx4_core.ko
- mlx4_en.ko

A.8.2.1 Example: Adding an Ethernet Driver to initrd (Linux)

Prerequisites

1. The FlexBoot image is already programmed on the adapter card.
2. The DHCP server is installed and configured as described in Section 4.3.1 on page 51, and connected to the client machine.
3. An `initrd` file.
4. To add an Ethernet driver into `initrd`, you need to copy the Ethernet modules to the diskless image. Your machine needs to be pre-installed with a *MLNX_EN Linux Driver* that is appropriate for the kernel version the diskless image will run.

Adding the Ethernet Driver to the initrd File

Warning! The following procedure modifies critical files used in the boot procedure. It must be executed by users with expertise in the boot process. Improper application of this procedure may prevent the diskless machine from booting.

Step 1. Back up your current `initrd` file.

Step 2. Make a new working directory and change to it.

```
host1$ mkdir /tmp/initrd_en
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_en
```

Step 3. Normally, the `initrd` image is zipped. Extract it using the following command:

```
host1$ gzip -dc <initrd image> | cpio -id
```

The initrd files should now be found under /tmp/initrd_en

Step 4. Create a directory for the ConnectX EN modules and copy them.

```
host1$ mkdir -p /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
host1$ cd /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers
host1$cp net/mlx4/mlx4_core.ko /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
host1$cp net/mlx4/mlx4_en.ko /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
```

Step 5. To load the modules, you need the `insmod` executable. If you do not have it in your `initrd`, please add it using the following command:

```
host1$ cp /sbin/insmod /tmp/initrd_en/sbin/
```

Step 6. If you plan to give your Ethernet device a static IP address, then copy `ifconfig`. Otherwise, skip this step.

```
host1$ cp /sbin/ifconfig /tmp/initrd_en/sbin
```

Step 7. Now you can add the commands for loading the copied modules into the file `init`. Edit the file `/tmp/initrd_en/init` and add the following lines at the point you wish the Ethernet driver to be loaded.

Warning! The order of the following commands (for loading modules) is critical.

```
echo "loading Mellanox ConnectX EN driver"
/sbin/insmod lib/modules/mlnx_en/mlx4_core.ko
/sbin/insmod lib/modules/mlnx_en/mlx4_en.ko
```

Step 8. Now you can assign a static or dynamic IP address to your Mellanox ConnectX EN network interface.

Step 9. Save the `init` file.

Step 10. Close `initrd`.

```
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_en
host1$ find ./ | cpio -H newc -o > /tmp/new_initrd_en.img
host1$ gzip /tmp/new_init_en.img
```

At this stage, the modified `initrd` (including the Ethernet driver) is ready and located at `/tmp/new_init_ib.img.gz`. Copy it to the original `initrd` location and rename it properly.

A.9 iSCSI Boot

Mellanox FlexBoot enables an iSCSI-boot of an OS located on a remote iSCSI Target. It has a built-in iSCSI Initiator which can connect to the remote iSCSI Target and load from it the kernel and `initrd`. There are two instances of connection to the remote iSCSI Target: the first is for getting the kernel and `initrd` via FlexBoot, and the second is for loading other parts of the OS via `initrd`.

Note: Linux distributions such as SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SPx and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 (or above) can be directly installed on an iSCSI target. At the end of this direct installation, initrd is capable to continue loading other parts of the OS on the iSCSI target. (Other distributions may also be suitable for direct installation on iSCSI targets.)

If you choose to continue loading the OS (after boot) through the HCA device driver, please verify that the initrd image includes the HCA driver as described in Section A.7.

A.9.1 Configuring an iSCSI Target in Linux Environment

Prerequisites

Step 1. Make sure that an iSCSI Target is installed on your server side.

Tip You can download and install an iSCSI Target from the following location: http://sourceforge.net/projects/iscsitarget/files/iscsitarget/

Step 2. Dedicate a partition on your iSCSI Target on which you will later install the operating system

Step 3. Configure your iSCSI Target to work with the partition you dedicated. If, for example, you choose partition /dev/sda5, then edit the iSCSI Target configuration file `/etc/ietd.conf` to include the following line under the iSCSI Target iqn line:

```
Lun 0 Path=/dev/sda5,Type=fileio
```

Tip The following is an example of an iSCSI Target iqn line:

```
Target iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.10:iscsiboot
```

Step 4. Start your iSCSI Target.

Example:

```
host1# /etc/init.d/iscsitarget start
```

Configuring the DHCP Server to Boot From an iSCSI Target

Configure DHCP as described in Section 4.3.1, "IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP".

Edit your DHCP configuration file (`/etc/dhcpd.conf`) and add the following lines for the machine(s) you wish to boot from the iSCSI target:

```
Filename "";
option root-path "iscsi:iscsi_target_ip::::iscsi_target_iqn";
```

The following is an example for configuring an IB/ETH device to boot from an iSCSI target:

```
host  host1{
filename "";


# For a ConnectX device with ports configured as InfiniBand, comment out
# the following line
 # option dhcp-client-identifier =
              ff:00:00:00:00:00:02:00:00:02:c9:00:00:02:c9:03:00:00:10:39;


# For a ConnectX device with ports configured as Ethernet, comment out
# the following line
# hardware ethernet 00:02:c9:00:00:bb;


# For an InfiniHost III Ex comment out the following line
# option  dhcp-client-identifier = \
# fe:00:55:00:41:fe:80:00:00:00:00:00:00:00:02:c9:03:00:00:0d:41;


option root-path "iscsi:11.4.3.7::::iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.10:iscsiboot";
}
```

A.9.2 iSCSI Boot Example of SLES 10 SP2 OS

This section provides an example of installing the SLES 10 SP2 operating system on an iSCSI target and booting from a diskless machine via FlexBoot. Note that the procedure described below assumes the following:

- The client's LAN card is recognized during installation
- The iSCSI target can be connected to the client via LAN and InfiniBand

Prerequisites

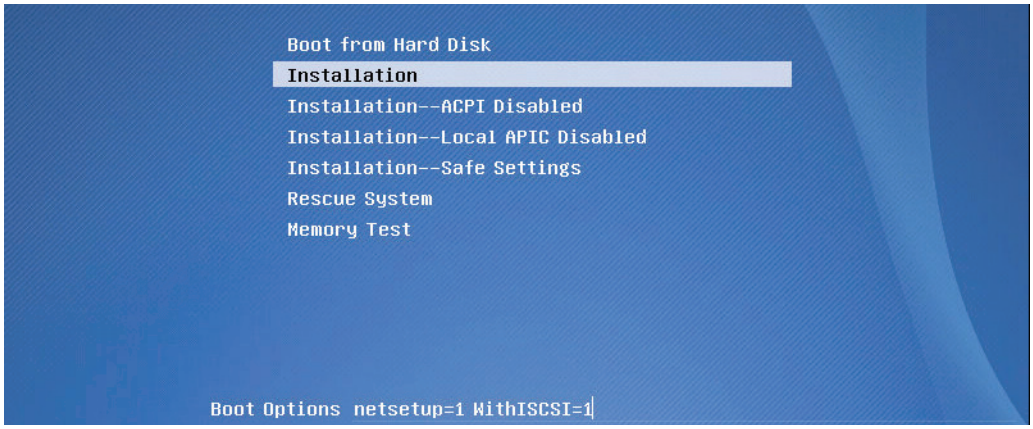
See Section A.6.1, on page 194.

Warning! The following procedure modifies critical files used in the boot procedure. It must be executed by users with expertise in the boot process. Improper application of this procedure may prevent the diskless machine from booting.

Procedure

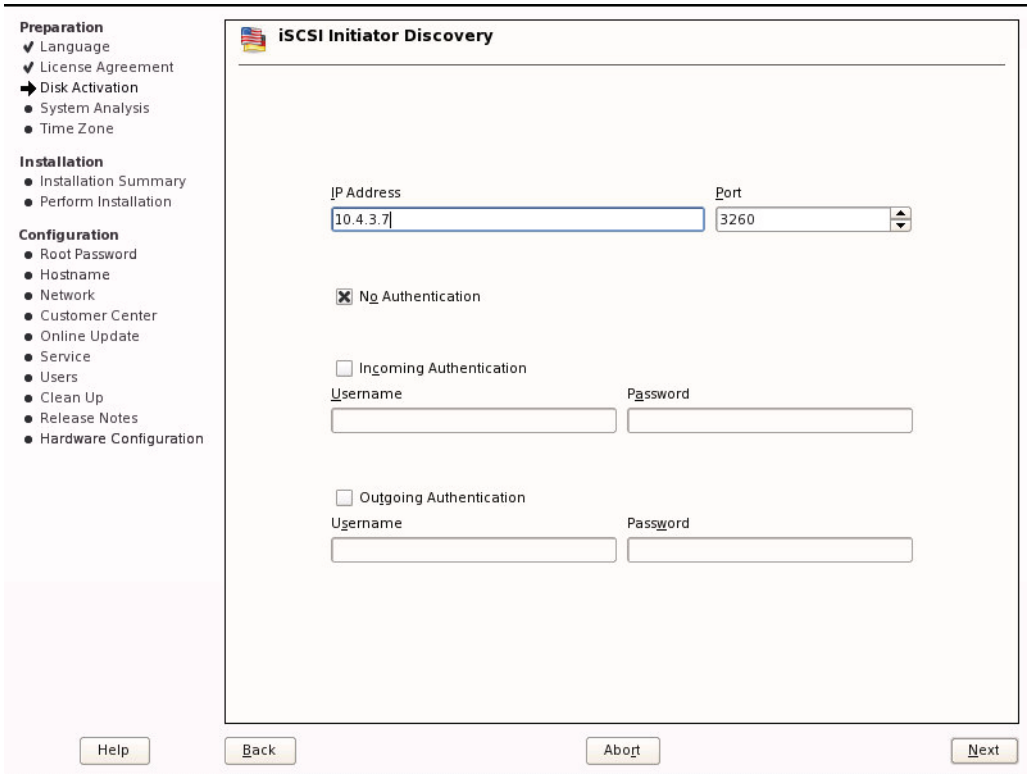
Step 1. Load the SLES 10 SP2 installation disk and enter the following parameters as boot options:

```
netsetup=1  WithISCSI=1
```

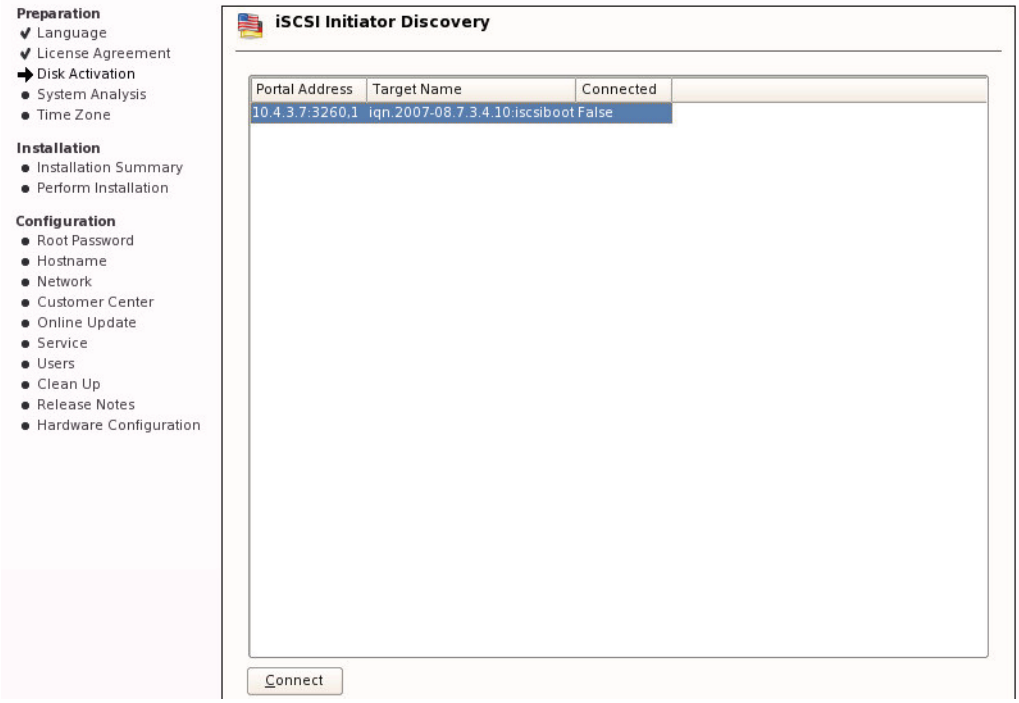


Step 2. Continue with the procedure as instructed by the installation program until the "iSCSI Initiator Overview" window appears.

Step 3. Click the Add tab in the iSCSI Initiator Overview window. An iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will pop up. Enter the IP Address of your iSCSI target and click Next.

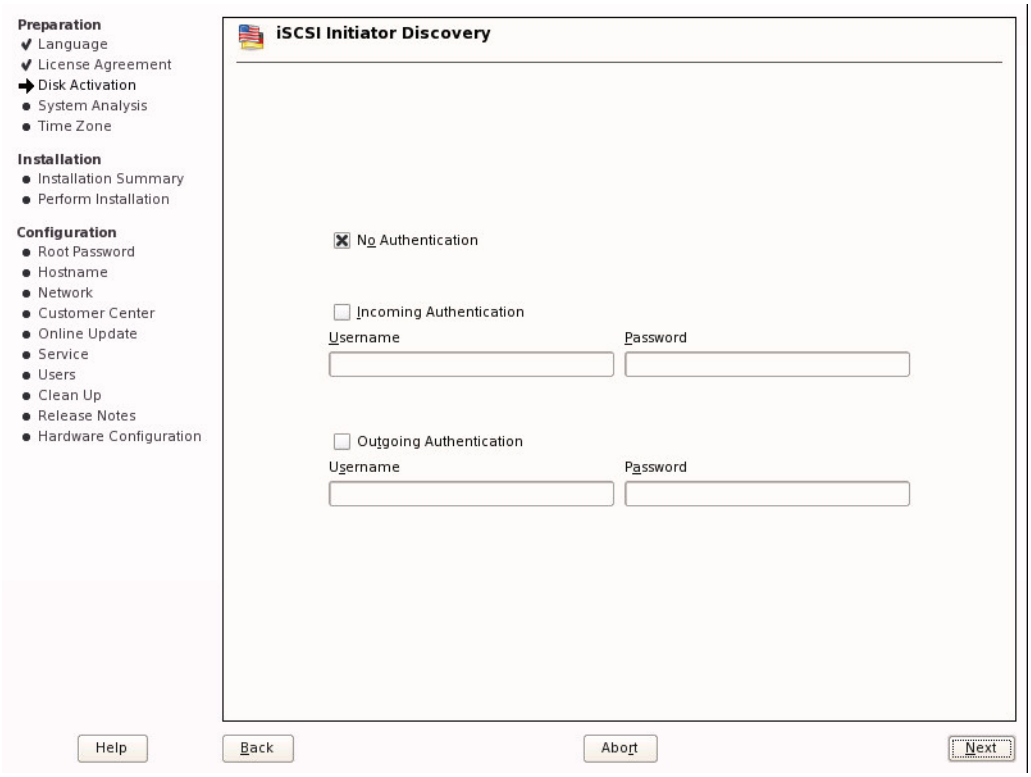


Step 4. Details of the discovered iSCSI target(s) will be displayed in the iSCSI Initiator Discovery window. Select the target that you wish to connect to and click Connect.

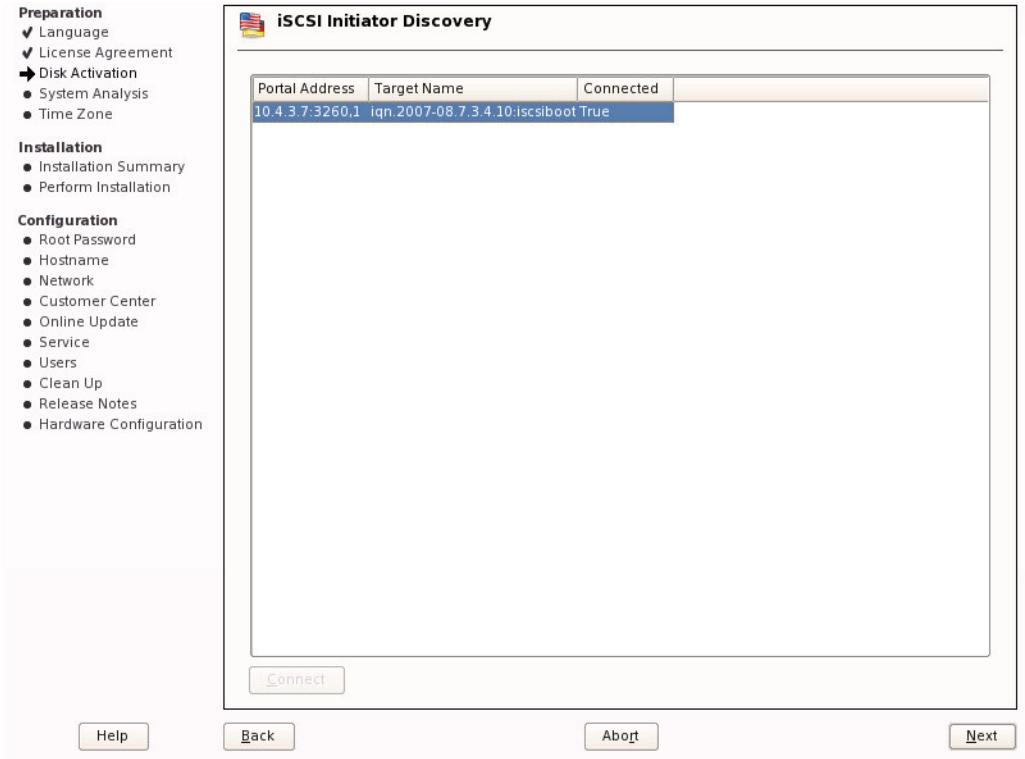


Tip If no iSCSI target was recognized, then either the target was not properly installed or no connection was found between the client and the iSCSI target. Open a shell to ping the iSCSI target (you can use CTRL-ALT-F2) and verify that the target is or is not accessible. To return to the (graphical) installation screen, press CTRL-ALT-F7.

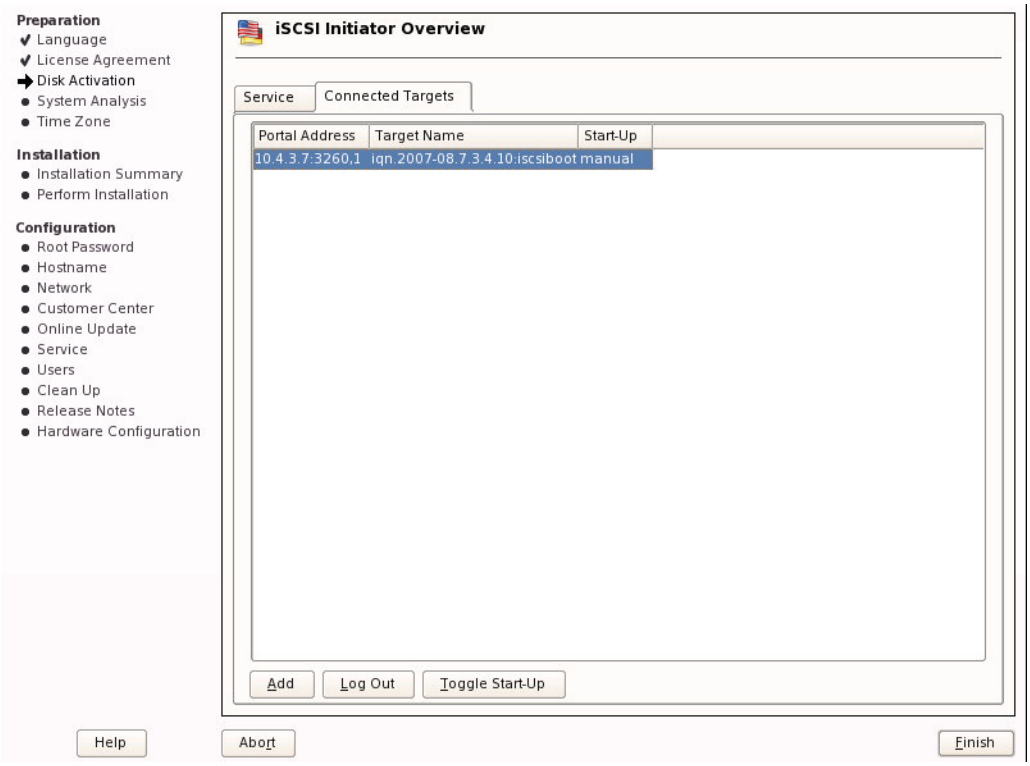
Step 5. The iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will now request authentication to access the iSCSI target. Click Next to continue without authentication unless authentication is required.



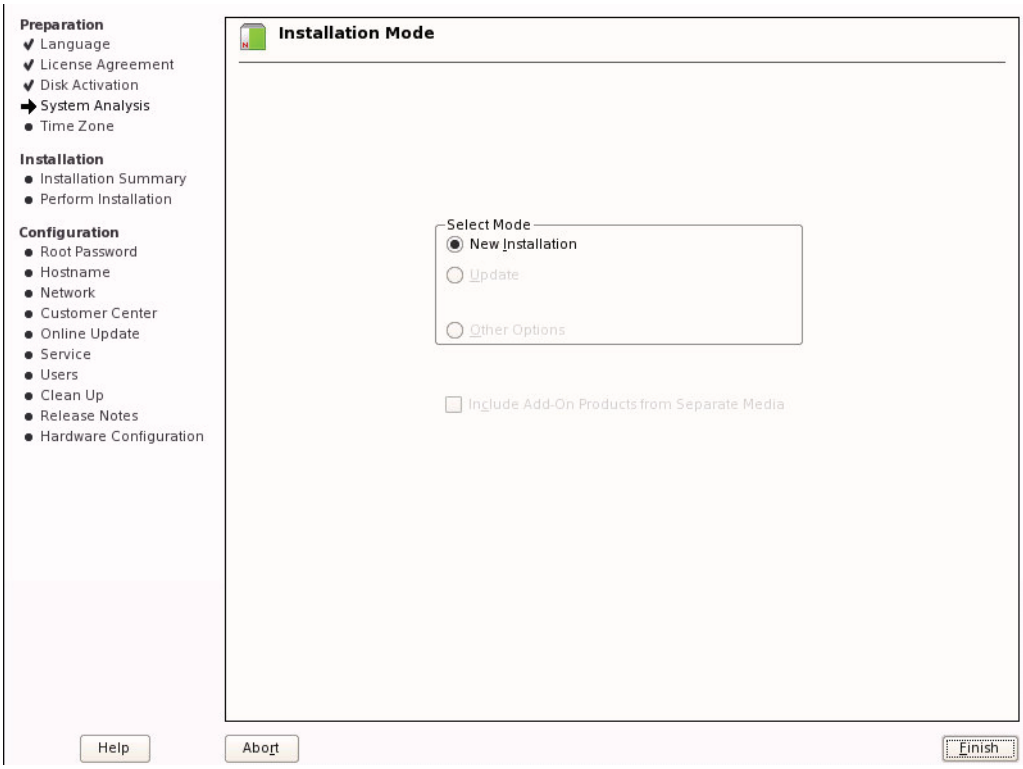
Step 6. The iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will show the iSCSI target that got connected to. Note that the Connected column must indicate True for this target. Click Next. (See figure below.)



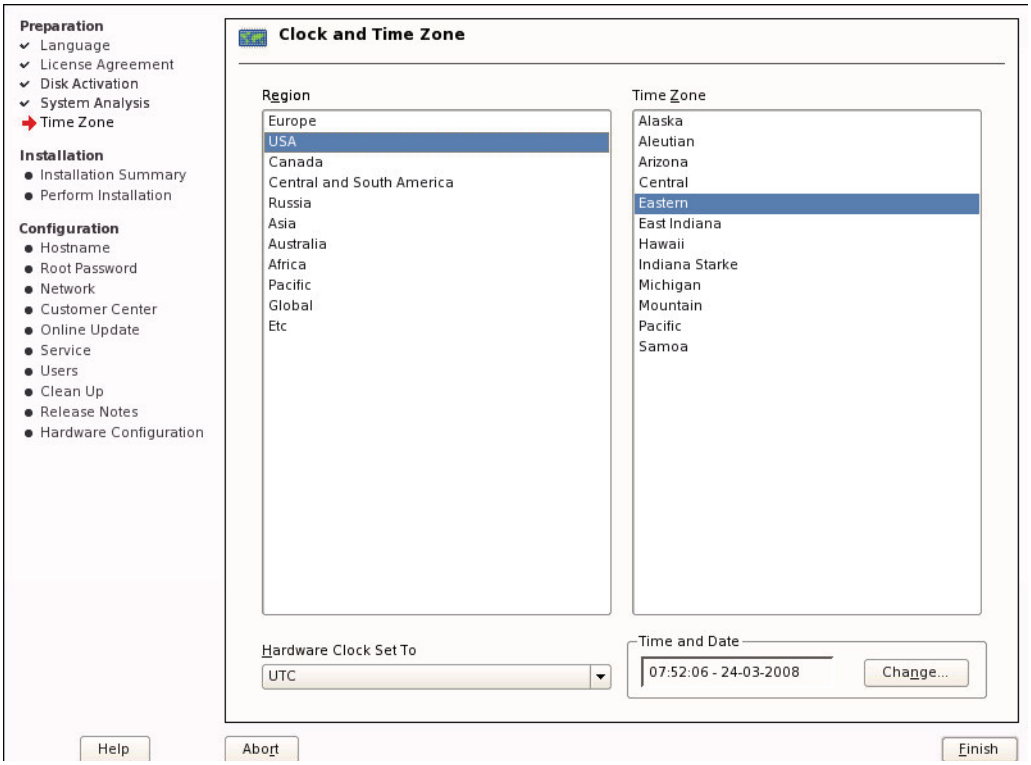
Step 7. The iSCSI Initiator Overview window will pop up. Click Toggle Start-Up to change start up from manual to automatic. Click Finish.



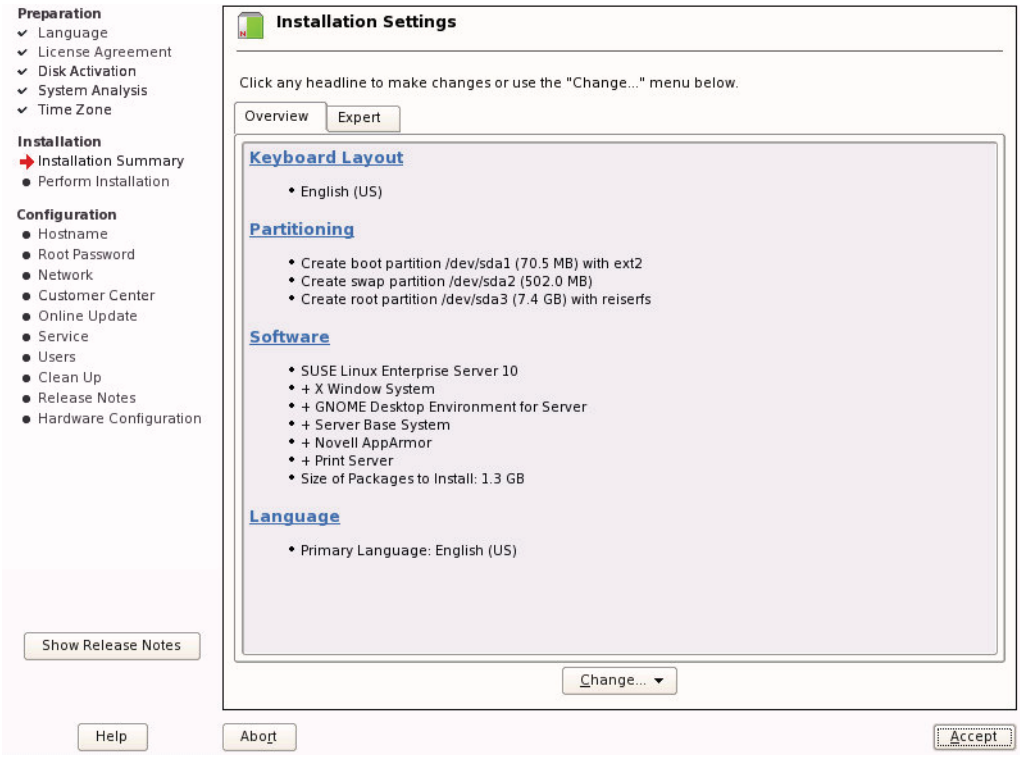
Step 8. Select New Installation then click Finish in the Installation Mode window.



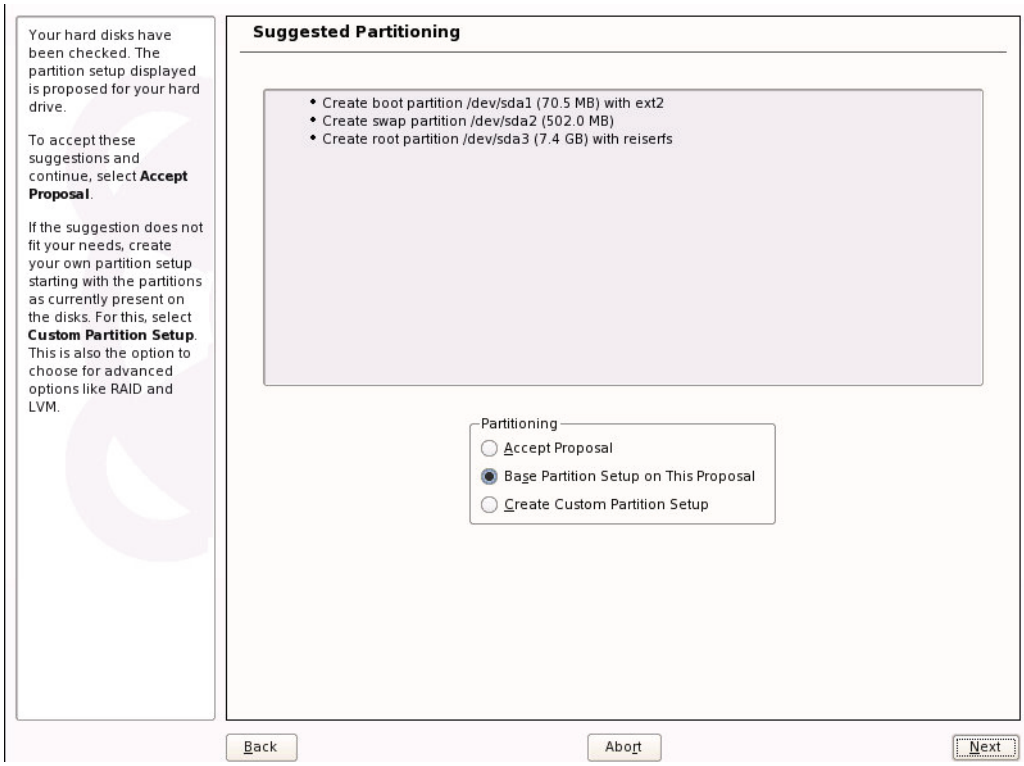
Step 9. Select the appropriate Region and Time Zone in the Clock and Time Zone window, then click Finish.



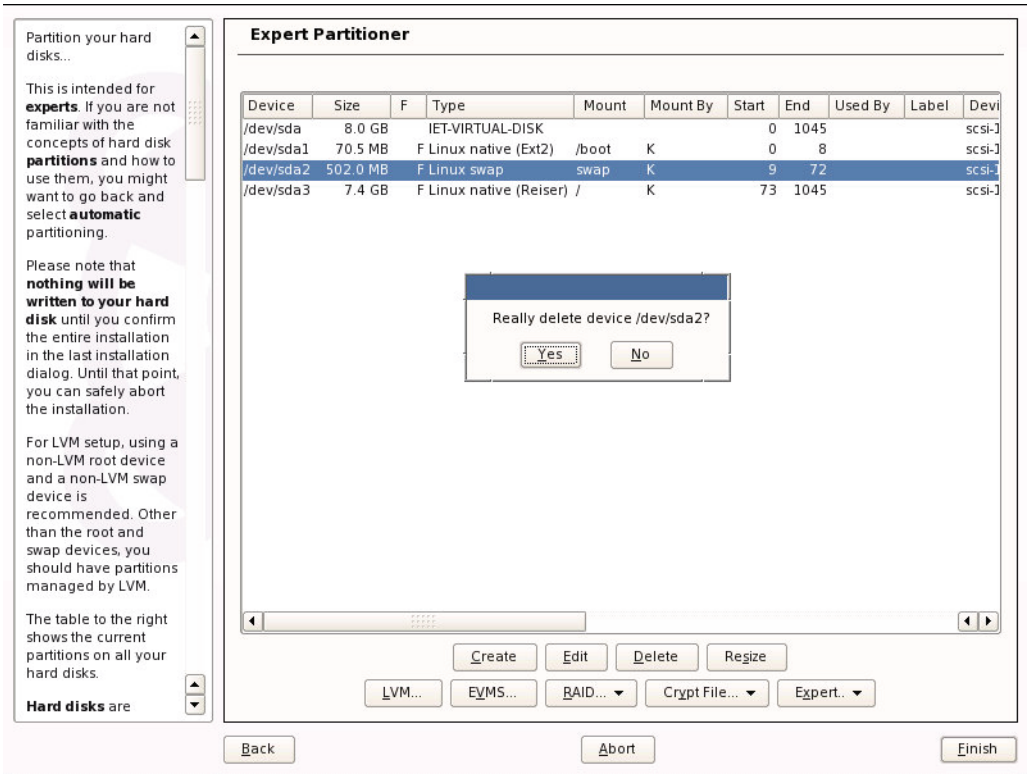
Step 10. In the Installation Settings window, click Partitioning to get the Suggested Partitioning window.



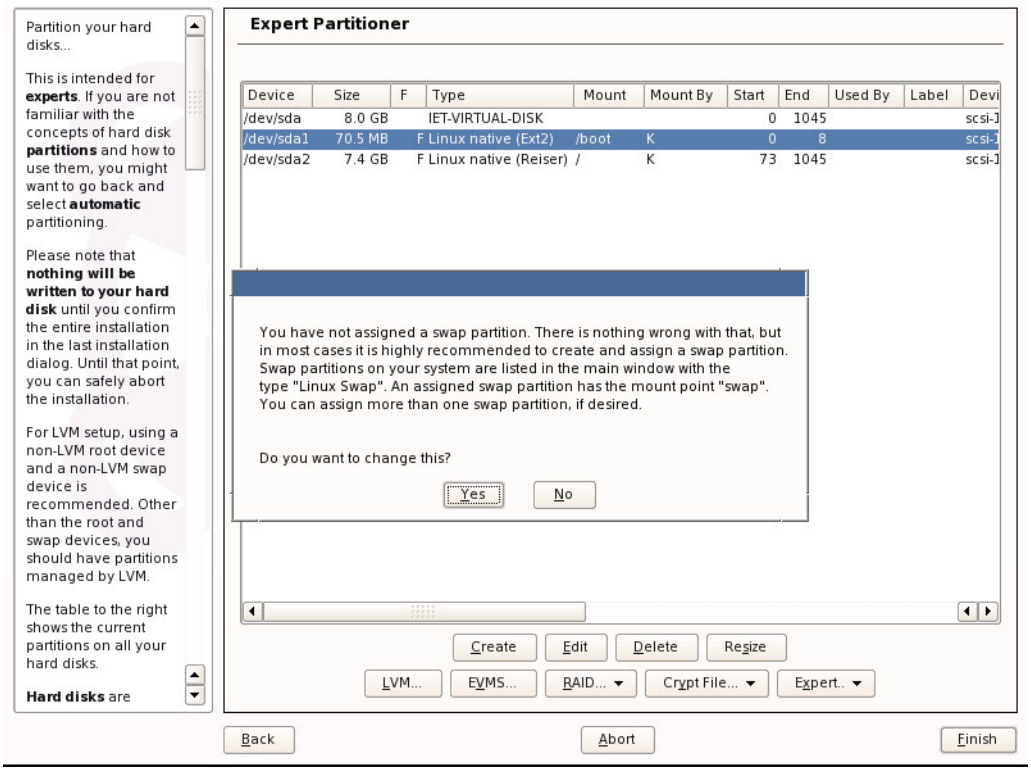
Step 11. Select Base Partition Setup on This Proposal then click Next.


Your hard disks have been checked. The partition setup displayed is proposed for your hard drive.
To accept these suggestions and continue, select Accept Proposal.
If the suggestion does not fit your needs, create your own partition setup starting with the partitions as currently present on the disks. For this, select Custom Partition Setup. This is also the option to choose for advanced options like RAID and LVM.
Suggested Partitioning
Create boot partition /dev/sda1 (70.5 MB) with ext2
Create swap partition /dev/sda2 (502.0 MB)
Create root partition /dev/sda3 (7.4 GB) with reiserfs
Partitioning
Accept Proposal
Base Partition Setup on This Proposal
Create Custom Partition Setup
Back
Abort
Next

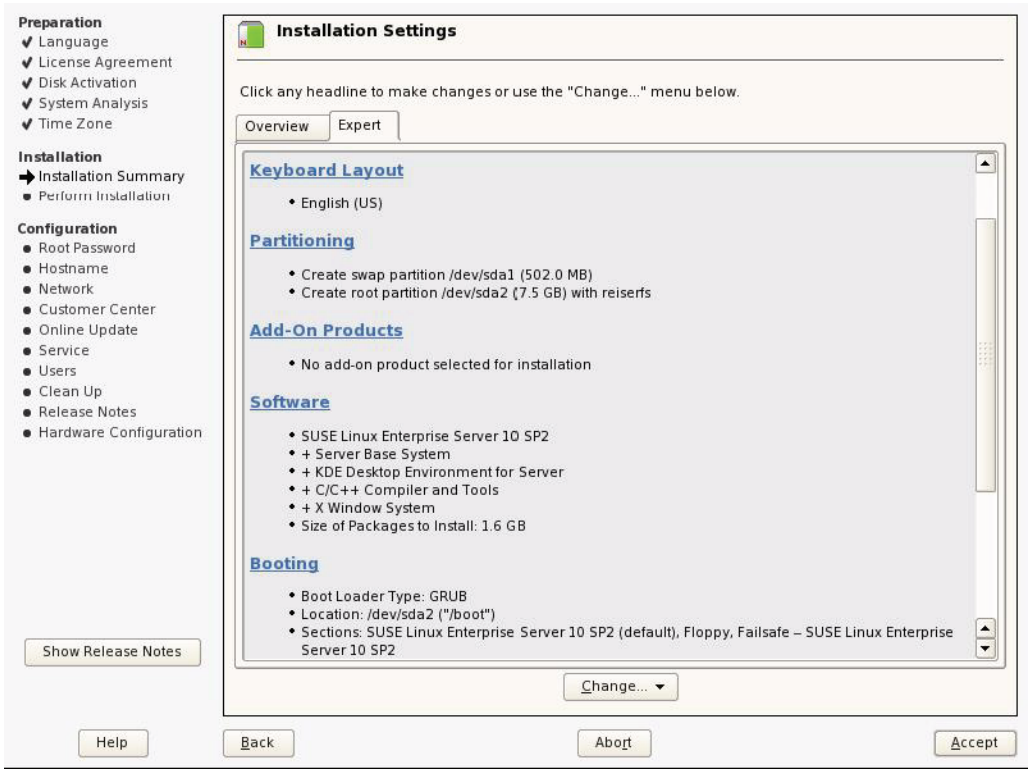
Step 12. In the Expert Partitioner window, select from the IET-VIRTUAL-DISK device the row that has its Mount column indicating ‘swap’, then click Delete. Confirm the delete operation and click Finish.


Partition your hard disks...
This is intended for experts. If you are not familiar with the concepts of hard disk partitions and how to use them, you might want to go back and select automatic partitioning.
Please note that nothing will be written to your hard disk until you confirm the entire installation in the last installation dialog. Until that point, you can safely abort the installation.
For LVM setup, using a non-LVM root device and a non-LVM swap device is recommended. Other than the root and swap devices, you should have partitions managed by LVM.
The table to the right shows the current partitions on all your hard disks.
Hard disks are
Expert Partitioner
Device Size F Type Mount Mount By Start End Used By Label Devi
/dev/sda 8.0 GB IET-VIRTUAL-DISK 0 1045 scsi-1
/dev/sda1 70.5 MB F Linux native (Ext2) /boot K 0 8 scsi-1
/dev/sda2 502.0 MB F Linux swap swap K 9 72 scsi-1
/dev/sda3 7.4 GB F Linux native (Reiser) / K 73 1045 scsi-1
Really delete device /dev/sda2?
Yes
No
Create
Edit
Delete
Resize
LVM...
EVMS...
RAID...
Crypt File...
Expert..
Back
Abort
Finish

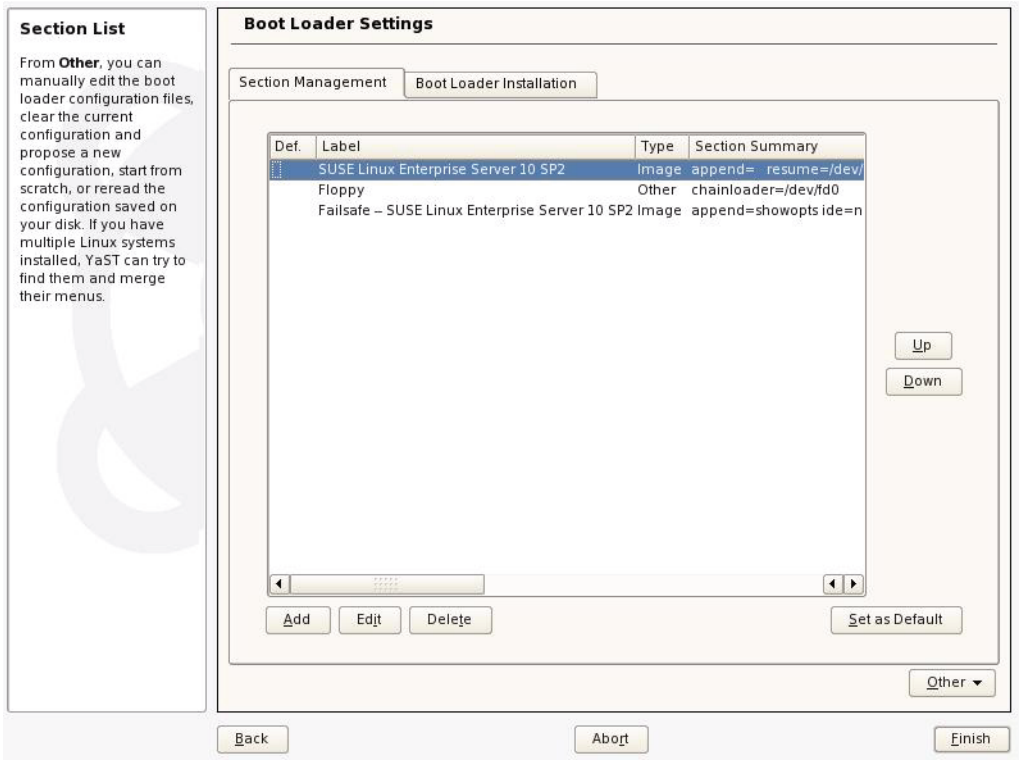
Step 13. In the pop-up window click No to approve deleting the swap partition. You will be returned to Installation Settings window. (See image below.)


Partition your hard disks...
This is intended for experts. If you are not familiar with the concepts of hard disk partitions and how to use them, you might want to go back and select automatic partitioning.
Please note that nothing will be written to your hard disk until you confirm the entire installation in the last installation dialog. Until that point, you can safely abort the installation.
For LVM setup, using a non-LVM root device and a non-LVM swap device is recommended. Other than the root and swap devices, you should have partitions managed by LVM.
The table to the right shows the current partitions on all your hard disks.
Hard disks are
Expert Partitioner
Device Size F Type Mount Mount By Start End Used By Label Devi
/dev/sda 8.0 GB IET-VIRTUAL-DISK 0 1045 scsi-1
/dev/sda1 70.5 MB F Linux native (Ext2) /boot K 0 8 scsi-1
/dev/sda2 7.4 GB F Linux native (Reiser) / K 73 1045 scsi-1
You have not assigned a swap partition. There is nothing wrong with that, but in most cases it is highly recommended to create and assign a swap partition. Swap partitions on your system are listed in the main window with the type "Linux Swap". An assigned swap partition has the mount point "swap". You can assign more than one swap partition, if desired.
Do you want to change this?
Yes
No
Create
Edit
Delete
Resize
LVM...
EVMS...
RAID...
Crypt File...
Expert..
Back
Abort
Finish

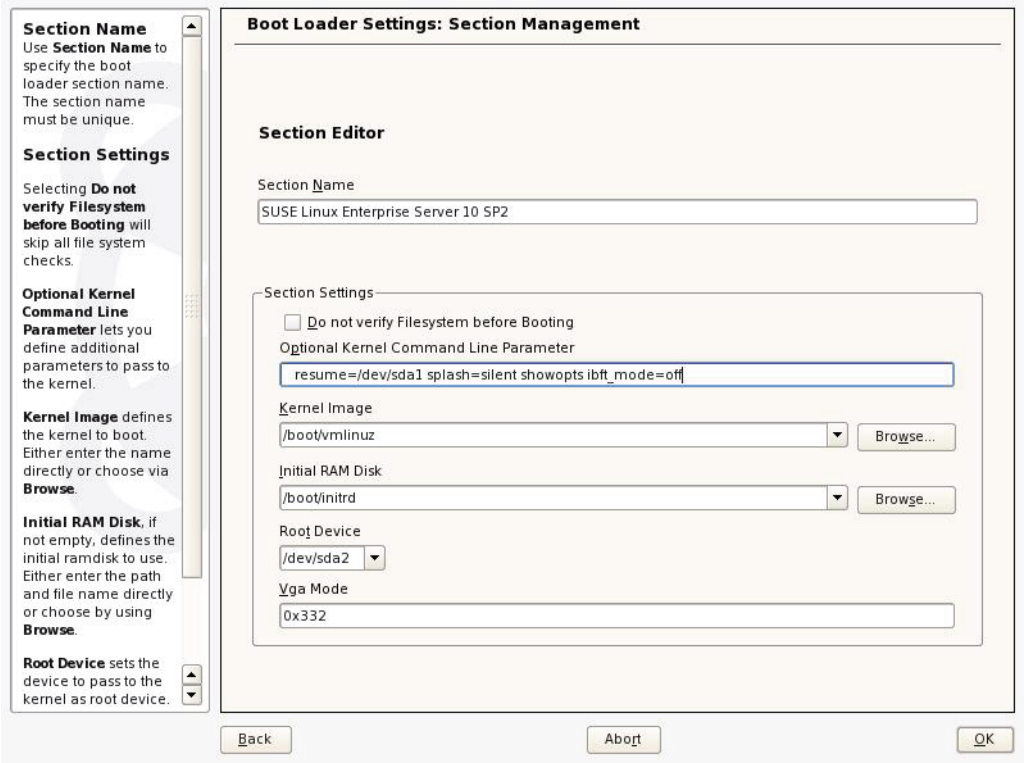
Step 14. Select the Expert tab and click Booting.



Step 15. Click Edit in the Boot Loader Settings window.

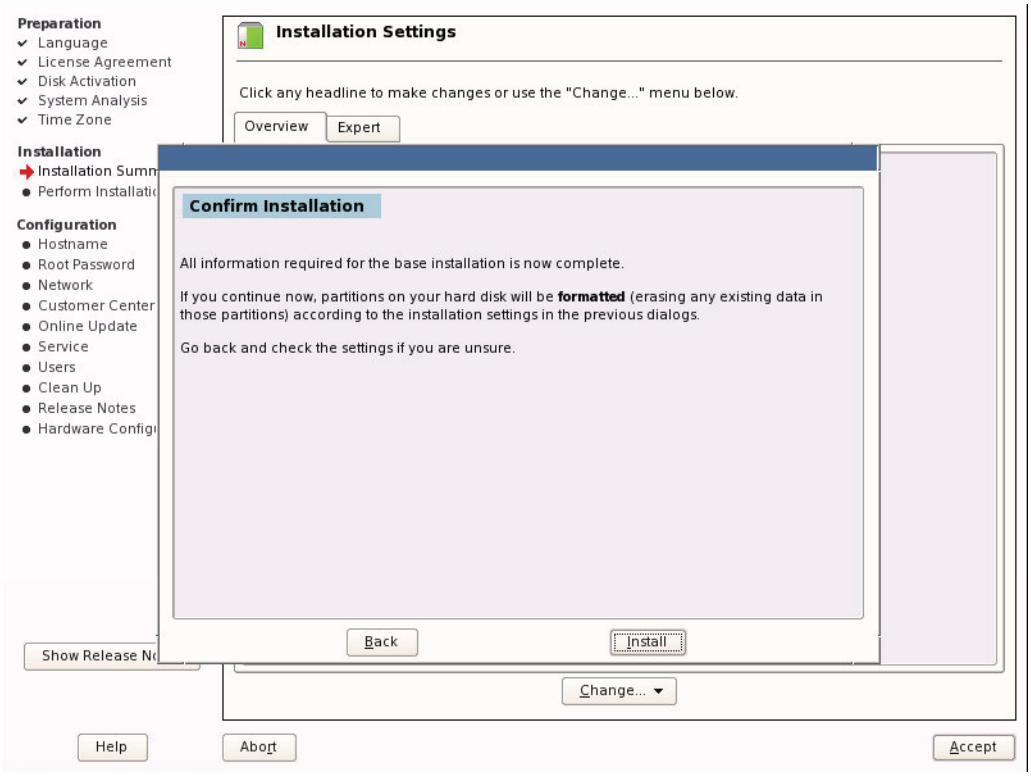


Step 16. In the Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter field, append the following string to the end of the line: “ibft_mode=off” (include a space before the string). Click OK and then Finish to apply the change.


Section Name
Use Section Name to specify the boot loader section name. The section name must be unique.
Section Settings
Selecting Do not verify Filesystem before Booting will skip all file system checks.
Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter lets you define additional parameters to pass to the kernel.
Kernel Image defines the kernel to boot. Either enter the name directly or choose via Browse.
Initial RAM Disk, if not empty, defines the initial ramdisk to use. Either enter the path and file name directly or choose by using Browse.
Root Device sets the device to pass to the kernel as root device.
Boot Loader Settings: Section Management
Section Editor
Section Name
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SP2
Section Settings
Do not verify Filesystem before Booting
Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter
resume=/dev/sda1 splash=silent showopts ibft_mode=off
Kernel Image
/boot/vmlinuz
Browse...
Initial RAM Disk
/boot/initrd
Browse...
Root Device
/dev/sda2
Vga Mode
0x332
Back
Abort
OK

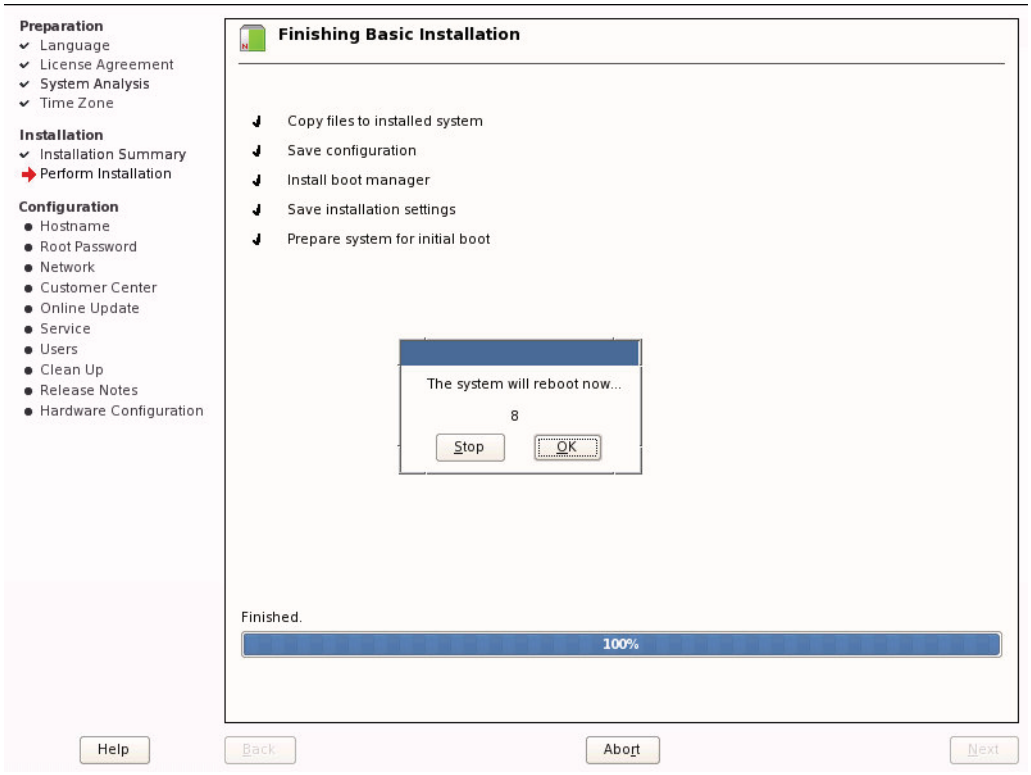
Step 17. If you wish to change additional settings, click the appropriate item and perform the changes, and click Accept when done.

Step 18. In the Confirm Installation window, click Install to start the installation. (See image below.)

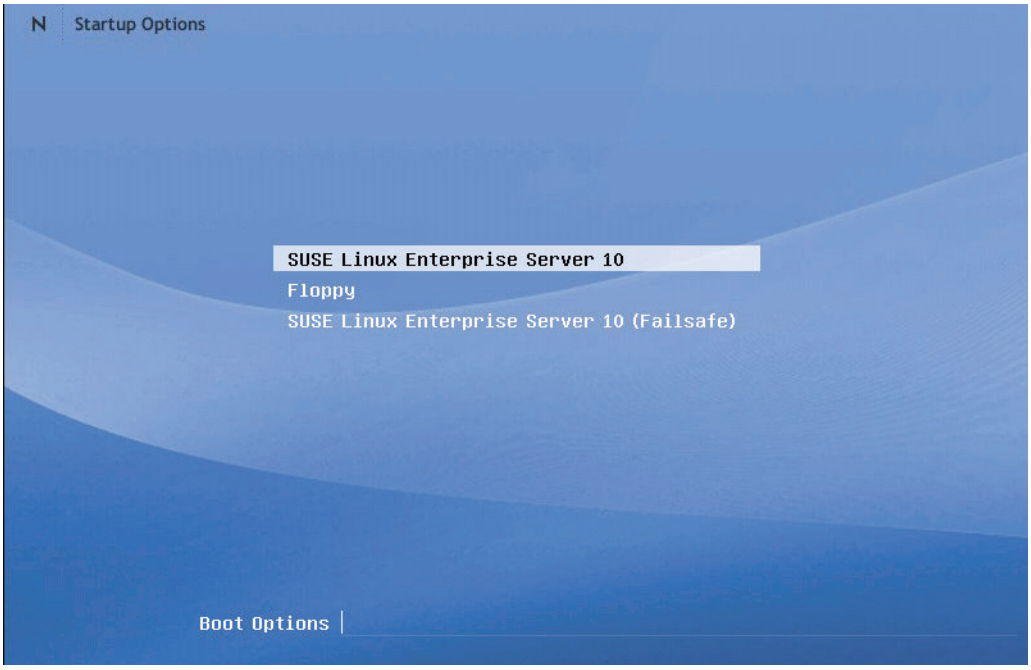


Step 19. At the end of the file copying stage, the Finishing Basic Installation window will pop up and ask for confirming a reboot. You can click OK to skip count-down. (See image below.)

Note: Assuming that the machine has been correctly configured to boot from FlexBoot via its connection to the iSCSI target, make sure that "MLNX IB" (for ConnectX family) or gPXE (for InfiniHost III family) has the highest priority in the BIOS boot sequence.



Step 20. Once the boot is complete, the Startup Options window will pop up. Select SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SP2 then press Enter.



Step 21. The Hostname and Domain Name window will pop up. Continue configuring your machine until the operating system is up, then you can start running the machine in normal operation mode.

Step 22. (Optional) If you wish to have the second instance of connecting to the iSCSI Target go through the IB driver, copy the `initrd` file under `/boot` to a new location, add the IB driver into it after the load commands of the iSCSI Initiator modules, and continue as described in Section A.7, on page 196.

Warning! Pay extra care when changing `initrd` as any mistake may prevent the client machine from booting. It is recommended to have a back-up iSCSI Initiator on a machine other than the client you are working with, to allow for debug in case `initrd` gets corrupted.

In addition, edit the `init` file (that is in the `initrd` zip) and look for the following string

```
if [ "$iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR" ] ; then
   iscsiserver="$iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR"
fi
```

Now add before the string the following line:

```
iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR=<IB IP Address of iSCSI Target>
```

Example:

```
iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR=11.4.3.7
```

A.10 WinPE

Mellanox FlexBoot enables WinPE boot via TFTP. For instructions on preparing a WinPE image, please see http://etherboot.org/wiki/winpe.

Appendix B: ConnectX EN PXE

B.1 Overview

This appendix describes "Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE", the software for Boot over Mellanox Technologies network adapter devices supporting Ethernet. Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE enables booting kernels or operating systems (OSes) from remote servers in compliance with the PXE specification.

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE is based on the open source project Etherboot/gPXE available at http://www.etherboot.org.

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE first initializes the network adapter device. Then it connects to a DHCP server to obtain its assigned IP address and network parameters, and also to obtain the source location of the kernel/OS to boot from. The DHCP server instructs Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE to access the kernel/OS through a TFTP server, an iSCSI target, or other service.

The binary code is exported by the device as an expansion ROM image.

B.1.1 Supported Mellanox Network Adapter Devices and Firmware

The package supports all ConnectX® and ConnectX®-2 Network Adapter family devices and cards. Specifically, adapter products responding to the following PCI Device IDs are supported:

- Decimal 25408 (Hexadecimal: 6340)
- Decimal 25418 (Hexadecimal: 634a)
- Decimal 26418 (Hexadecimal: 6732)
- Decimal 26428 (Hexadecimal: 673c)
- Decimal 26438 (Hexadecimal: 6746)
- Decimal 25448 (Hexadecimal: 6368)
- Decimal 26448 (Hexadecimal: 6750)
- Decimal 26478 (Hexadecimal: 676e)
- Decimal 26488 (Hexadecimal: 6778)
- Decimal 25458 (Hexadecimal: 6372)
- Decimal 26458 (Hexadecimal: 675A)

B.1.2 Tested Platforms

See *Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE Release Notes* (`ConnectX_EN_PXE_release_notes.txt`).

B.1.3 ConnectX EN PXE in Mellanox OFED

The ConnectX EN PXE package is provided as as part of the Mellaox OFED for Linux ISO image. The package includes a PXE ROM image file for each of the supported Mellanox network adapter devices. For example:

- ConnectX EN (PCI DevID: 25448)

  `CONNECTX_EN_25448_ROM-<version>.rom`

Note: Please refer to the release notes file for the exact contents.

B.2 Burning the PXE ROM Image

B.2.1 Burning the Image on ConnectX® EN / ConnectX®-2 EN

Note: This section is applicable only to ConnectX® EN / ConnectX®-2 EN devices with firmware versions 2.7.000 or later. For earlier firmware versions, please follow the instructions in Section B.2.2 on page 225.

Prerequisites

1. Expansion ROM Image

   The expansion ROM images are provided as part of the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* package and are listed in the release notes file: `ConnectX_EN_PXE_release_notes.txt`.

2. Firmware Burning Tools

   The Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package (version 2.6.0 or later) should be installed on your machine in order to burn the PXE ROM image. MFT is part of the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* package.

Burning the Image

To burn the composite image, perform the following steps:

1. Obtain the MST device name. Run:

   ```
   # mst start
   # mst status
   ```

   The device name will be of the form: `mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}`.[1]

2. Create and burn the composite image. Run:

   ```
   # flint -dev <mst device name> brom <expansion ROM image>
   ```

   Example on Linux:

   ```
   # flint -dev /dev/mst/mt25448_pci_cr0 brom ConnectX_EN_25448_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
   ```

   Example on Windows:

   ```
   # flint -dev mt25448_pci_cr0 brom ConnectX_EN_25448_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
   ```

1. Depending on the OS, the device name may be superseded with a prefix.

B.2.2 Updating the Image on ConnectX® EN Devices with Legacy Firmware

Note: This section is applicable only to ConnectX® EN devices with firmware versions earlier than 2.7.000.

Prerequisites

1. Firmware .mlx and .ini files (included in the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* package)
2. Expansion ROM Image

   The expansion ROM images are provided as part of the SW package and are listed in the release notes file: `ConnectX_EN_PXE_release_notes.txt`.
3. Firmware Burning Tools

   The Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package (version 2.6.0 or later) should be installed on your machine in order to burn the PXE ROM image. MFT is part of the *Mellanox OFED for Linux* package.

   Specifically, you will be using the `mlxburn` tool to create and burn a composite image (from an adapter device's firmware and the PXE ROM image) onto the same Flash device of the adapter.

Image Burning Procedure

To burn the composite image, perform the following steps:

1. Obtain the MST device name. Run:

```
# mst start
# mst status
```

   The device name will be of the form: `mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}`.[1]
2. Create and burn the composite image. Run:

```
# mlxburn -d <mst device name> -fw <FW .mlx file> -conf <.ini file> \
       -exp_rom <expansion ROM image>
```

   Example on Linux:

```
# mlxburn -dev /dev/mst/mt25448_pci_cr0 -fw fw-25408-X_X_XXX.mlx \
       -conf MNEH28-XTC.ini -exp_rom ConnectX_EN_25448_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
```

   Example on Windows:

```
# mlxburn -dev mt25448_pci_cr0 -fw fw-25408-X_X_XXX.mlx \
       -conf MNEH28-XTC.ini -exp_rom ConnectX_EN_25448_ROM-X_X_XXX.rom
```

B.3 Preparing the DHCP Server in Linux Environment

The DHCP server plays a major role in the boot process by assigning IP addresses for ConnectX EN PXE clients and instructs the clients where to boot from.

When the ConnectX EN PXE boot session starts, the PXE firmware attempts to bring up a ConnectX network link (port). If it succeeds to bring up a connected link, the PXE firmware communicates with the DHCP server. The DHCP server assigns an IP address to the PXE client and provides it with the location of the boot program.

1. Depending on the OS, the device name may be superceded with a prefix.

B.3.1 Configuring the DHCP Server

When a ConnectX EN PXE client boots, it sends the DHCP server various information, including its DHCP hardware Ethernet address (MAC). The MAC address is 6 bytes long, and it is used to distinguish between the various DHCP sessions.

Extracting the MAC Address – Method I

Run the following commands:

Note: The following MFT commands assume that the Mellanox Firmware Tools (MFT) package has been installed on the client machine.

```
# mst start
# mst status
```

The device name will be of the form: /dev/mst/mt<dev_id>_pci{_cr0|conf0}. Use this device name to obtain the MAC address via a query command.

```
# flint -d <MST_DEVICE_NAME> q
```

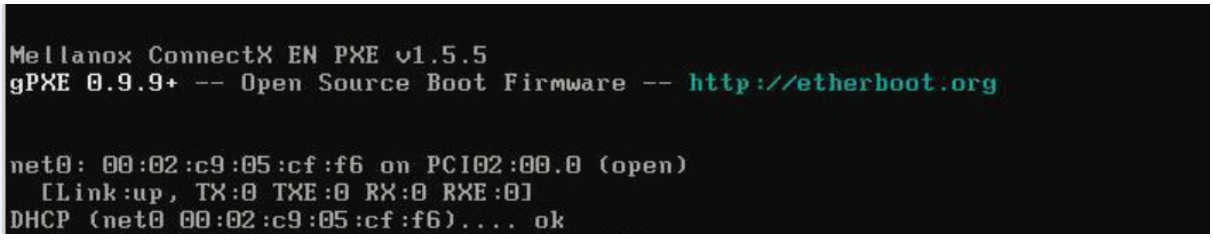
Example with ConnectX EN as the network adapter device:

```
# flint -d /dev/mst/mt25448_pci_cr0 q
     Image type:      ConnectX
     FW Version:      2.7.000
     Rom Info:        type=GPXE version=1.5.5 devid=25448
     Device ID:       25448
     Chip Revision:   A0
     Description:     Port1            Port2
     MACs:            0002c90000bb     0002c90000bc
     Board ID:        n/a (MT_0920110004)
     VSD:             n/a
     PSID:            MT_0920110004
```

Assuming that ConnectX EN PXE is connected via Port 1, then the MAC address is 00:02:c9:00:00:bb.

Extracting the MAC Address – Method II

The six bytes of MAC address can be captured from the display upon the boot of the ConnectX device session as shown in the figure below.


Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE v1.5.5
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:05:cf:f6 on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:up, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
DHCP (net0 00:02:c9:05:cf:f6).... ok

Placing MAC Addresses in /etc/dhcpd.conf

The following is an excerpt of a `/etc/dhcpd.conf` example file showing the format of representing a client machine for the DHCP server running on a Linux machine.

```
host host1 {
    next-server 11.4.3.7;
    filename "pxelinux.0";
    fixed-address 11.4.3.130;
    hardware ethernet 00:02:c9:00:00:bb;
}
```

B.4 TFTP Server

If you have set the 'filename' parameter in your DHCP configuration to a non-empty filename, you need to install TFTP (Trivial File Transfer Protocol). TFTP is a simple FTP-like file transfer protocol used to transfer files from the TFTP server to the boot client as part of the boot process.

B.5 BIOS Configuration

The expansion ROM image presents itself to the BIOS as a boot device. As a result, the BIOS will add "MLNX NIC <ver>" to the list of boot devices. The priority of this list can be modified through BIOS setup.

B.6 Operation

B.6.1 Prerequisites

- Make sure that your client is connected to the server(s)
- The ConnectX EN PXE image is already programmed on the adapter card – see Section B.2
- The DHCP server is configured and started as described in Section 4.3.1
- Configure and start at least one of the services iSCSI Target (see Section B.9) and/or TFTP (see Section B.4)

B.6.2 Starting Boot

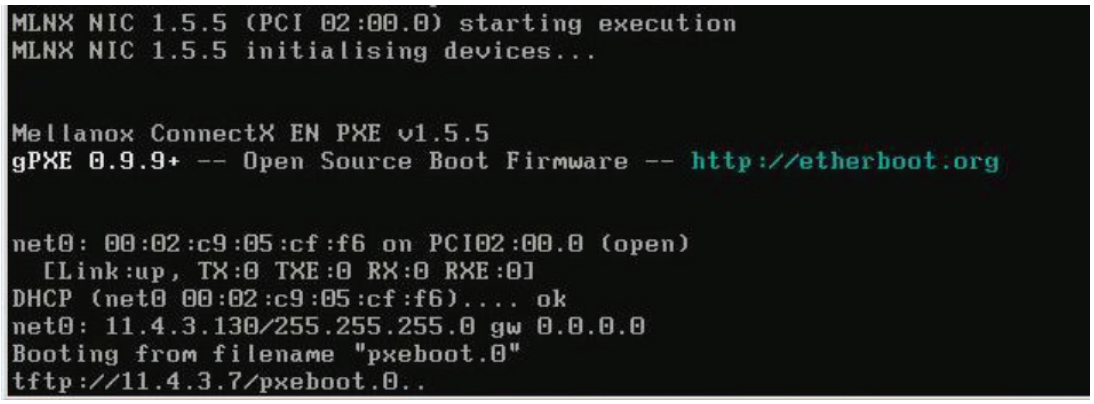
Boot the client machine and enter BIOS setup to configure MLNX NIC <ver> to be the first on the boot device priority list – see Section B.5.

Note: On dual-port network adapters, the client first attempts to boot from Port 1. If this fails, it switches to boot from Port 2.

If "MLNX NIC" was selected through BIOS setup, the client will boot from ConnectX EN PXE. The client will display ConnectX EN PXE attributes and will attempt to bring up a port link.

MLNX NIC 1.5.5 (PCI 02:00.0) starting execution
MLNX NIC 1.5.5 initialising devices...
Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE v1.5.5
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:05:cf:f6 on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:up, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]

If the Ethernet link comes up successfully, the client attempts connecting to the DHCP server to obtain an IP address and the source location of the kernel/OS to boot from. The client waits up to 30 seconds for a DHCP server response.


MLNX NIC 1.5.5 (PCI 02:00.0) starting execution
MLNX NIC 1.5.5 initialising devices...
Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE v1.5.5
gPXE 0.9.9+ -- Open Source Boot Firmware -- http://etherboot.org
net0: 00:02:c9:05:cf:f6 on PCI02:00.0 (open)
[Link:up, TX:0 TXE:0 RX:0 RXE:0]
DHCP (net0 00:02:c9:05:cf:f6).... ok
net0: 11.4.3.130/255.255.255.0 gw 0.0.0.0
Booting from filename "pxeboot.0"
tftp://11.4.3.7/pxeboot.0..

Next, ConnectX EN PXE attempts to boot as directed by the DHCP server.

B.7 Command Line Interface (CLI)

B.7.1 Invoking the CLI

When the boot process begins, the computer starts its Power On Self Test (POST) sequence. Shortly after completion of the POST, the user will be prompted to press CTRL-B to invoke Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE CLI. The user has few seconds to press CTRL-B before the message disappears (see figure).

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE v1.5.5
gPXE (http://etherboot.org) - 02:00.0 CB80 PCI3.00 PnP BBS PMM002C@04 CB80
Press Ctrl-B to configure MLNX NIC 1.5.5 (PCI 02:00.0)...

Alternatively, you may skip invoking CLI right after POST and invoke it, instead, right after ConnectX EN PXE *starts* booting.

Once the CLI is invoked, you will see the following prompt:

```
gPXE>
```

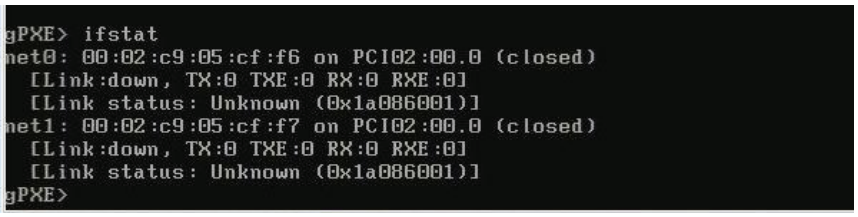
B.7.2 Operation

The CLI resembles a Linux shell, where the user can run commands to configure and manage one or more PXE port network interfaces. Each port is assigned a network interface called **net*i***, where ***i*** is 0, 1, 2,...<#of interface>. Some commands are general and are applied to all network interfaces. Other commands are port specific, therefore the relevant network interface is specified in the command.

B.7.3 Command Reference

B.7.3.1 ifstat

Displays the available network interfaces (in a similar manner to Linux's ifconfig).



B.7.3.2 ifopen net<x>

Opens the network interface net<x>. The list of network interfaces is available via the ifstat command.

B.7.3.3 ifclose net<x>

Closes the network interface net<x>. The list of network interfaces is available via the ifstat command.

B.7.3.4 autoboot

Starts the boot process from the device(s).

B.7.3.5 sanboot

Starts the boot process of an iSCSI target.

Example:

```
gPXE> sanboot iscsi:11.4.3.7::::iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.11:iscsiboot
```

B.7.3.6 echo

Echoes an environment variable.

Example:

```
gPXE> echo ${root-path}
```

B.7.3.7 dhcp

A network interface attempts to open the network interface and then tries to connect to and communicate with the DHCP server to obtain the IP address and filepath from which the boot will occur.

Example:

```
gPXE> dhcp net1
```

B.7.3.8 help

Displays the available list of commands.

B.7.3.9 exit

Exits from the command line interface.

B.8 Diskless Machines

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE supports booting diskless machines. To enable using an Ethernet driver, the (remote) kernel or `initrd` image must include and be configured to load the driver.

This can be achieved either by compiling the adapter driver into the kernel, or by adding the device driver module into the `initrd` image and loading it.

The Ethernet driver requires loading the following modules in the specified order (see Section B.8.1 for an example):

- mlx4_core.ko
- mlx4_en.ko

B.8.1 Example: Adding an Ethernet Driver to initrd (Linux)

Prerequisites

1. The ConnectX EN PXE image is already programmed on the adapter card.
2. The DHCP server is installed and configured as described in Section 4.3.1, “IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP”, and connected to the client machine.
3. An `initrd` file.
4. To add an Ethernet driver into `initrd`, you need to copy the Ethernet modules to the diskless image. Your machine needs to be pre-installed with a *Mellanox OFED for Linux* ISO image that is appropriate for the kernel version the diskless image will run.

Adding the Ethernet Driver to the initrd File

Warning! The following procedure modifies critical files used in the boot procedure. It must be executed by users with expertise in the boot process. Improper application of this procedure may prevent the diskless machine from booting.

Step 1. Back up your current `initrd` file.

Step 2. Make a new working directory and change to it.

```
host1$ mkdir /tmp/initrd_en
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_en
```

Step 3. Normally, the `initrd` image is zipped. Extract it using the following command:

```
host1$ gzip -dc <initrd image> | cpio -id
```

The initrd files should now be found under /tmp/initrd_en

Step 4. Create a directory for the ConnectX EN modules and copy them.

```
host1$ mkdir -p /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
host1$ cd /lib/modules/`uname -r`/updates/kernel/drivers
host1$cp net/mlx4/mlx4_core.ko /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
host1$cp net/mlx4/mlx4_en.ko /tmp/initrd_en/lib/modules/mlnx_en
```

Step 5. To load the modules, you need the `insmod` executable. If you do not have it in your `initrd`, please add it using the following command:

```
host1$ cp /sbin/insmod /tmp/initrd_en/sbin/
```

Step 6. If you plan to give your Ethernet device a static IP address, then copy `ifconfig`. Otherwise, skip this step.

```
host1$ cp /sbin/ifconfig /tmp/initrd_en/sbin
```

Step 7. Now you can add the commands for loading the copied modules into the file `init`. Edit the file `/tmp/initrd_en/init` and add the following lines at the point you wish the Ethernet driver to be loaded.

Warning! The order of the following commands (for loading modules) is critical.

```
echo "loading Mellanox ConnectX EN driver"
/sbin/insmod lib/modules/mlnx_en/mlx4_core.ko
/sbin/insmod lib/modules/mlnx_en/mlx4_en.ko
```

Step 8. Now you can assign a static or dynamic IP address to your Mellanox ConnectX EN network interface.

Step 9. Save the `init` file.

Step 10. Close `initrd`.

```
host1$ cd /tmp/initrd_en
host1$ find ./ | cpio -H newc -o > /tmp/new_initrd_en.img
host1$ gzip /tmp/new_init_en.img
```

Step 11. At this stage, the modified `initrd` (including the Ethernet driver) is ready and located at `/tmp/new_init_ib.img.gz`. Copy it to the original `initrd` location and rename it properly.

B.9 iSCSI Boot

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE enables an iSCSI-boot of an OS located on a remote iSCSI Target. It has a built-in iSCSI Initiator which can connect to the remote iSCSI Target and load from it the kernel and `initrd`. There are two instances of connection to the remote iSCSI Target: the first is for getting the kernel and `initrd` via ConnectX EN PXE, and the second is for loading other parts of the OS via `initrd`.

Note: Linux distributions such as SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SPx and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.1 can be directly installed on an iSCSI target. At the end of this direct installation, initrd is capable to continue loading other parts of the OS on the iSCSI target. (Other distributions may also be suitable for direct installation on iSCSI targets.)

If you choose to continue loading the OS (after boot) through the HCA device driver, please verify that the initrd image includes the adapter driver as described in Section B.8.1.

B.9.1 Configuring an iSCSI Target in Linux Environment

Prerequisites

Step 1. Make sure that an iSCSI Target is installed on your server side.

Tip You can download and install an iSCSI Target from the following location: http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=108475&package_id=117141

Step 2. Dedicate a partition on your iSCSI Target on which you will later install the operating system

Step 3. Configure your iSCSI Target to work with the partition you dedicated. If, for example, you choose partition /dev/sda5, then edit the iSCSI Target configuration file `/etc/ietd.conf` to include the following line under the iSCSI Target iqn line:

```
Lun 0 Path=/dev/sda5,Type=fileio
```

Tip The following is an example of an iSCSI Target iqn line:

```
Target iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.10:iscsiboot
```

Step 4. Start your iSCSI Target.

Example:

```
host1# /etc/init.d/iscsitarget start
```

Configuring the DHCP Server to Boot From an iSCSI Target in Linux Environment

Configure DHCP as described in Section B.3.1, “Configuring the DHCP Server”.

Edit your DHCP configuration file (`/etc/dhcpd.conf`) and add the following lines for the machine(s) you wish to boot from the iSCSI Target:

```
Filename "";
option root-path "iscsi:iscsi_target_ip::::iscsi_target_iqn";
```

The following is an example for configuring an Ethernet device to boot from an iSCSI Target:

```
host  host1{
filename "";
hardware ethernet 00:02:c9:00:00:bb;
option root-path "iscsi:11.4.3.7::::iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.10:iscsiboot";
}
```

B.10 iSCSI Boot Example of SLES 10 SP2 OS

This section provides an example of installing the SLES 10 SP2 operating system on an iSCSI target and booting from a diskless machine via ConnectX EN PXE. Note that the procedure described below assumes the following:

- The client's LAN card is recognized during installation
- The iSCSI target can be connected to the client via a LAN and a ConnectX Ethernet

Prerequisites

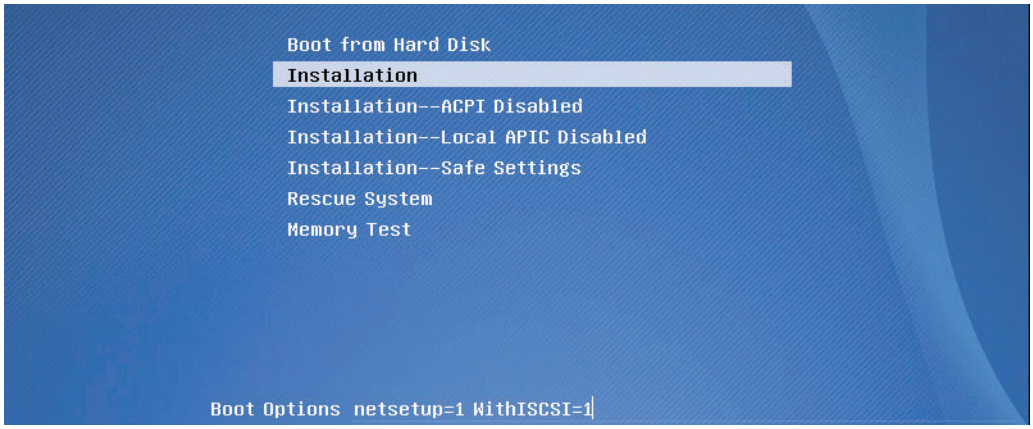
See Section B.6.1, on page 227.

Warning! The following procedure modifies critical files used in the boot procedure. It must be executed by users with expertise in the boot process. Improper application of this procedure may prevent the diskless machine from booting.

Procedure

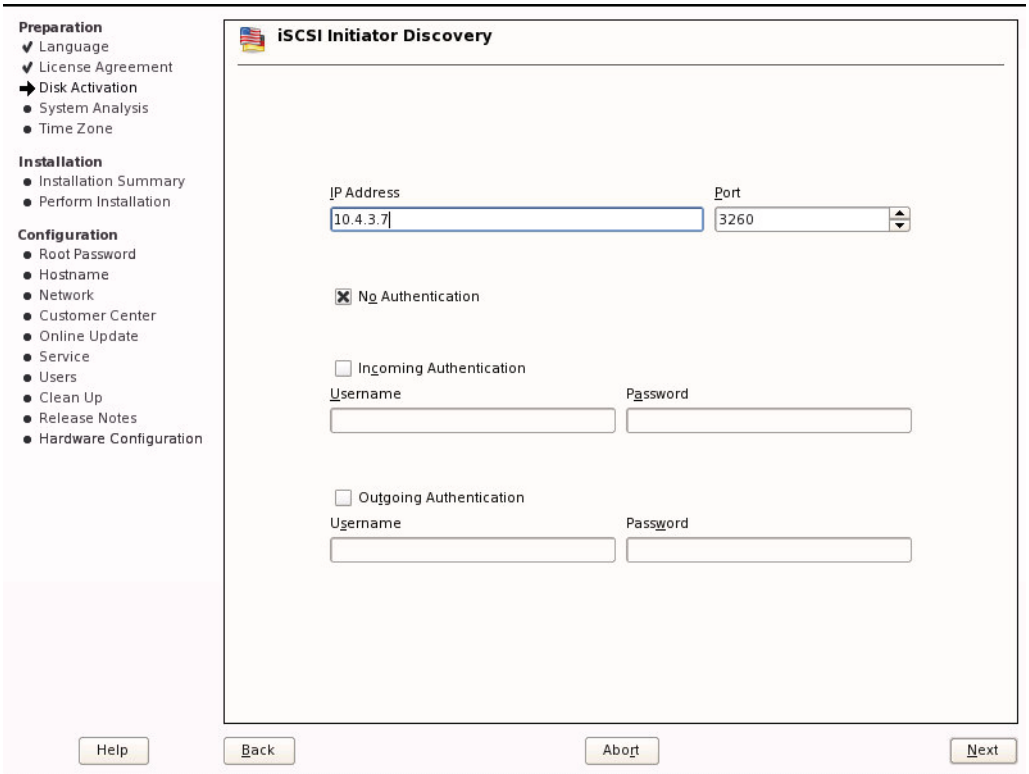
Step 1. Load the SLES 10 SP2 installation disk and enter the following parameters as boot options:

```
netsetup=1  WithISCSI=1
```

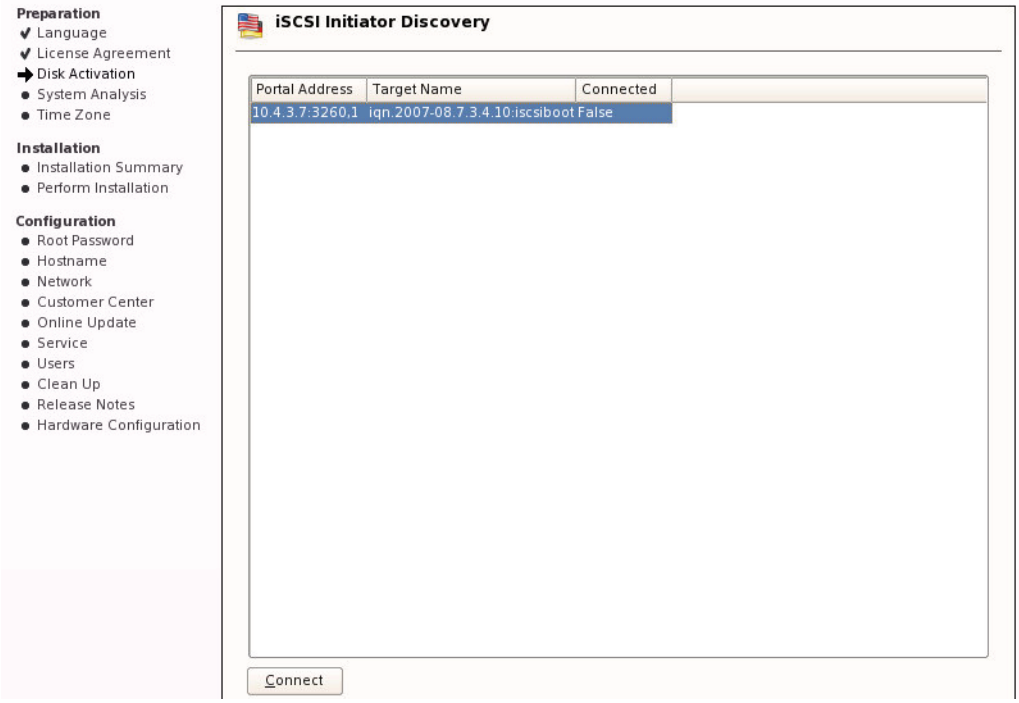


Step 2. Continue with the procedure as instructed by the installation program until the "iSCSI Initiator Overview" window appears.

Step 3. Click the Add tab in the iSCSI Initiator Overview window. An iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will pop up. Enter the IP Address of your iSCSI target and click Next.

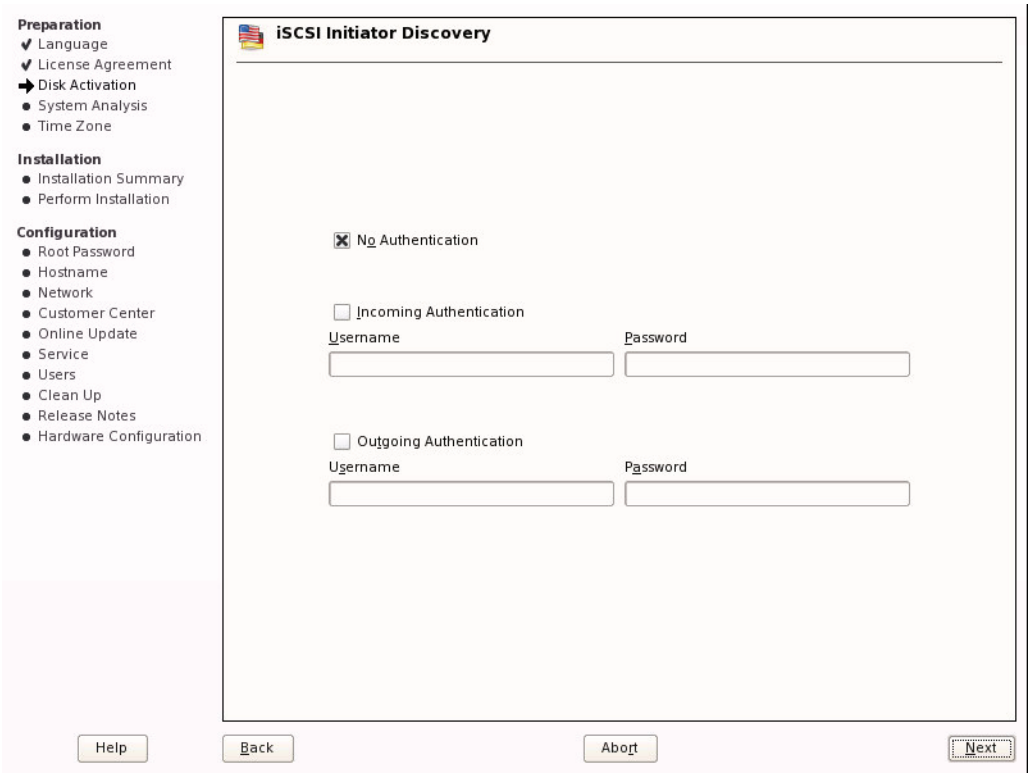


Step 4. Details of the discovered iSCSI target(s) will be displayed in the iSCSI Initiator Discovery window. Select the target that you wish to connect to and click Connect.

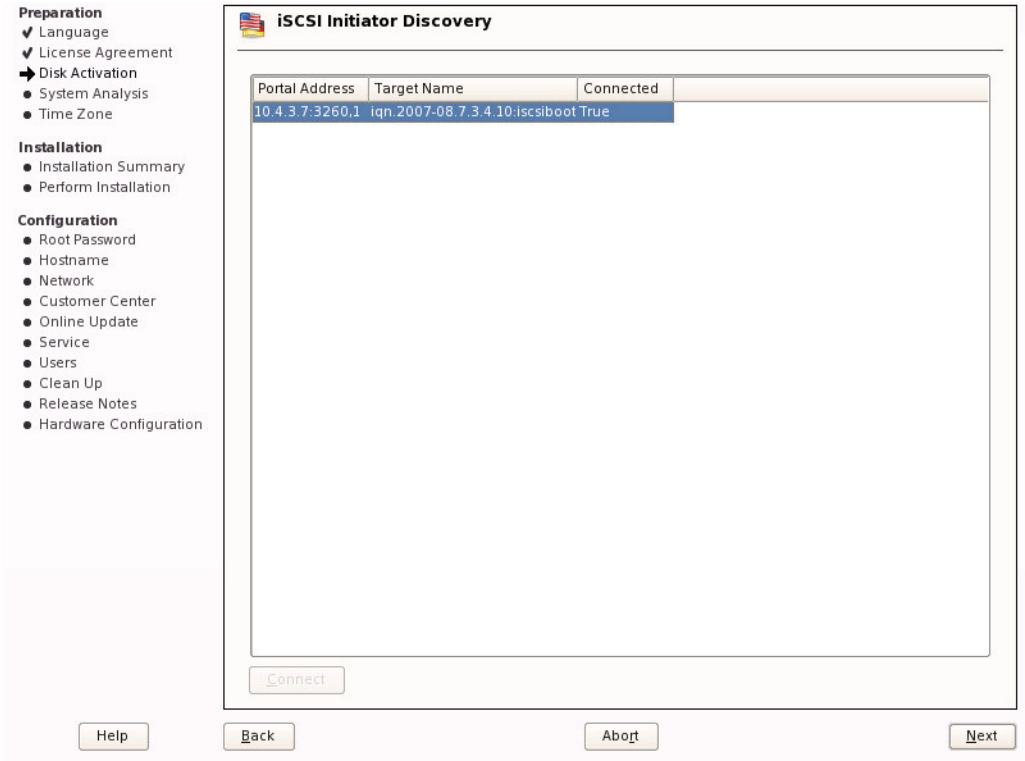


Tip If no iSCSI target was recognized, then either the target was not properly installed or no connection was found between the client and the iSCSI target. Open a shell to ping the iSCSI target (you can use CTRL-ALT-F2) and verify that the target is or is not accessible. To return to the (graphical) installation screen, press CTRL-ALT-F7.

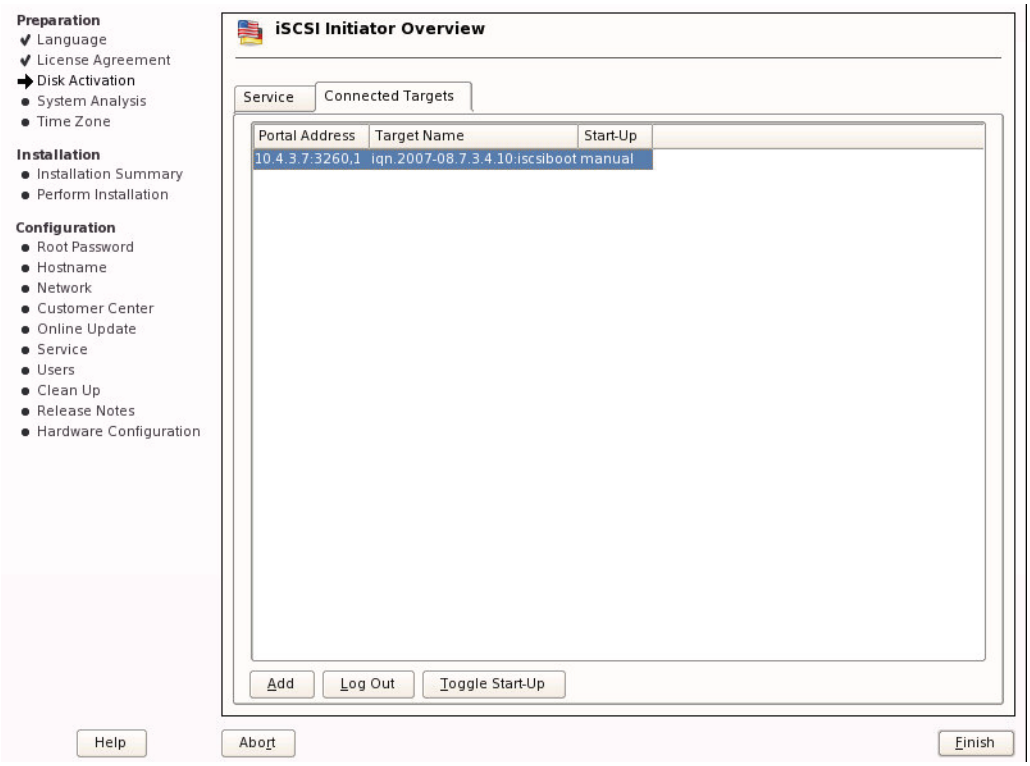
Step 5. The iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will now request authentication to access the iSCSI target. Click Next to continue without authentication unless authentication is required.



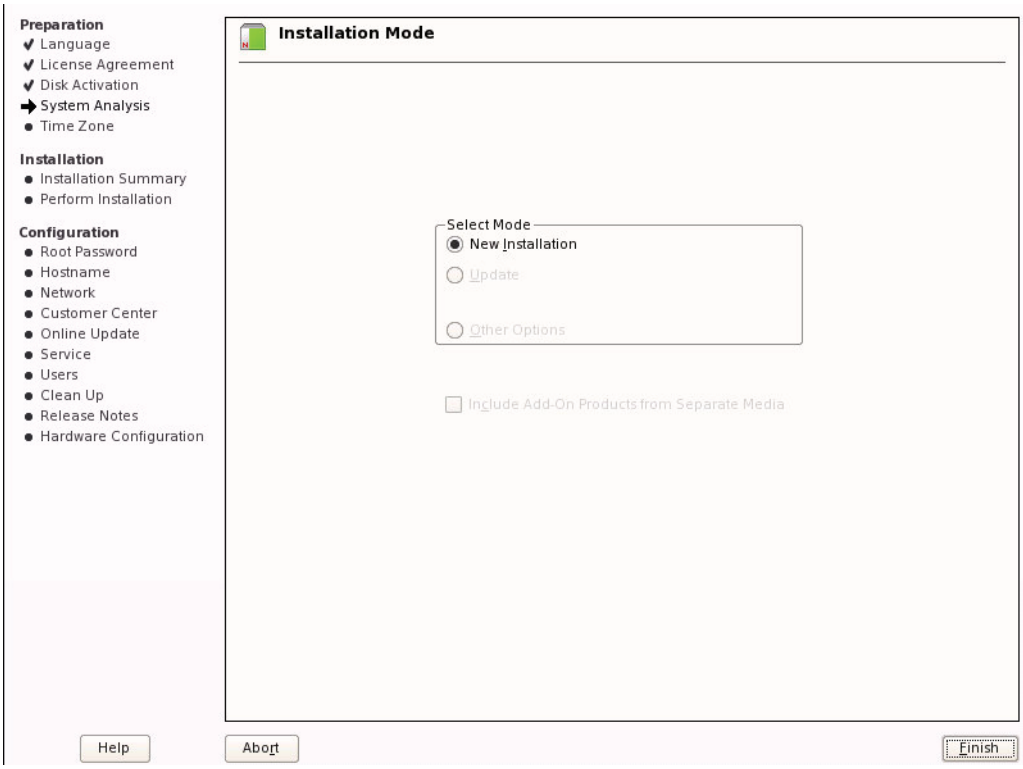
Step 6. The iSCSI Initiator Discovery window will show the iSCSI target that got connected to. Note that the Connected column must indicate True for this target. Click Next. (See figure below.)



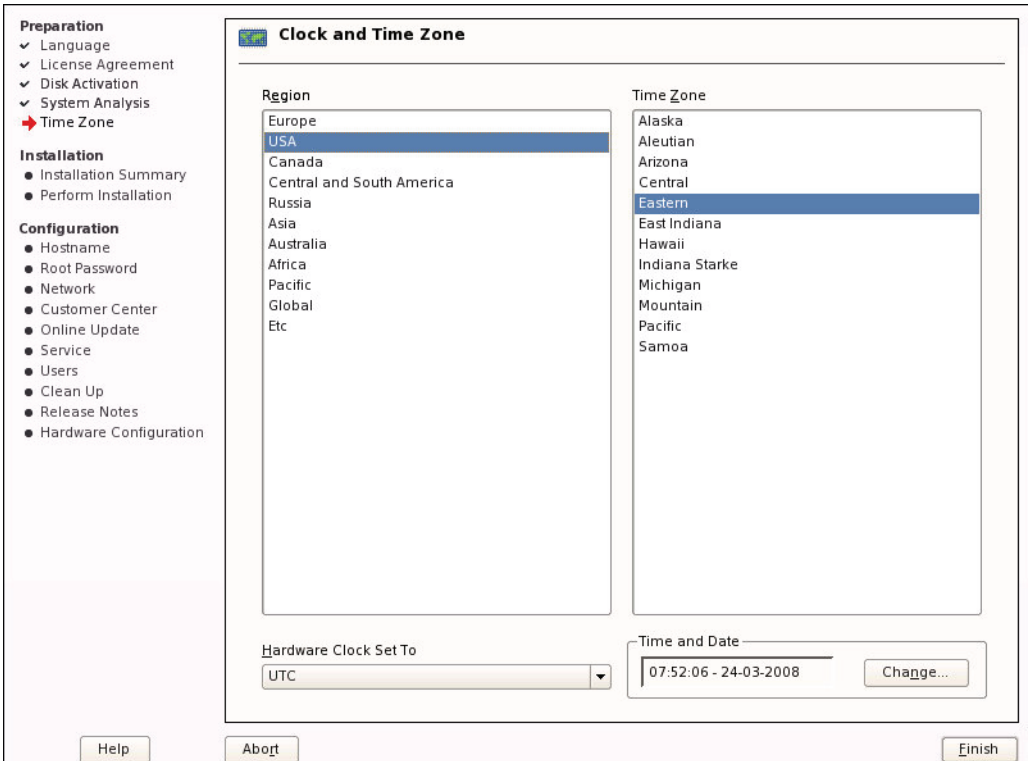
Step 7. The iSCSI Initiator Overview window will pop up. Click Toggle Start-Up to change start up from manual to automatic. Click Finish.



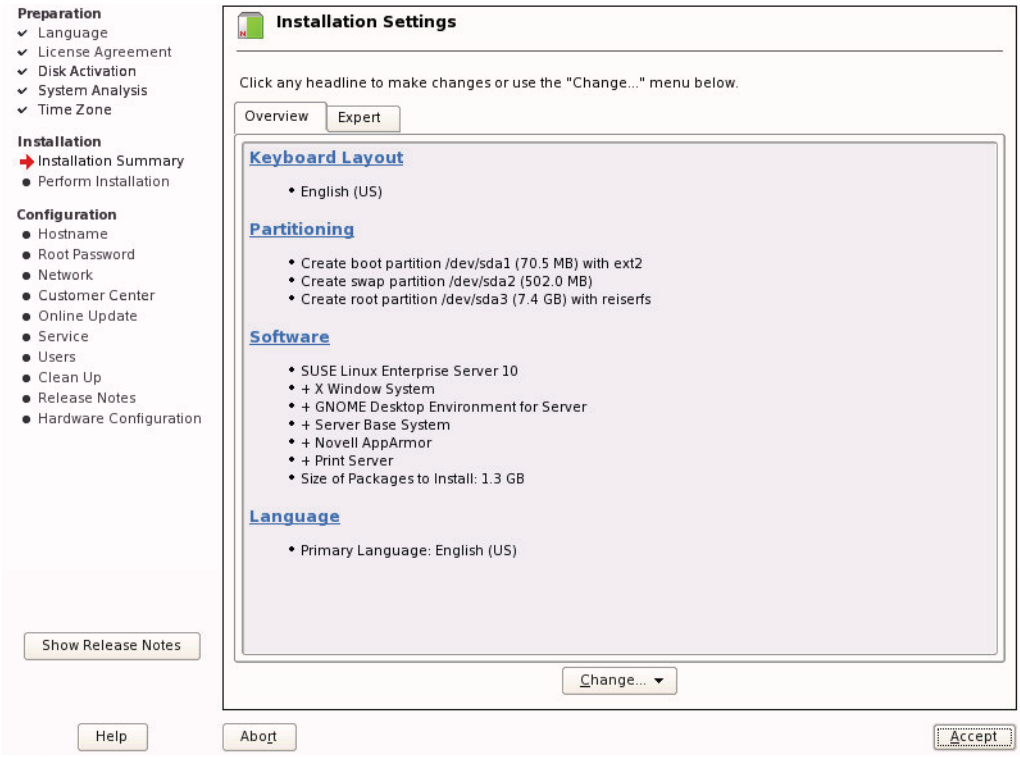
Step 8. Select New Installation then click Finish in the Installation Mode window.



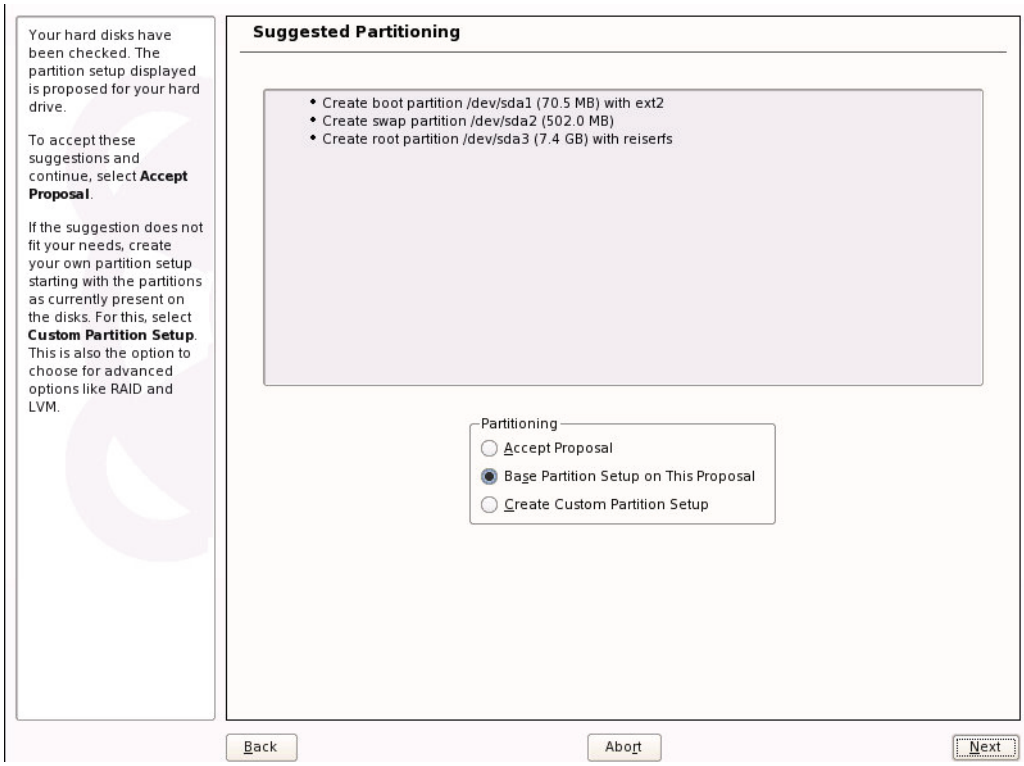
Step 9. Select the appropriate Region and Time Zone in the Clock and Time Zone window, then click Finish.



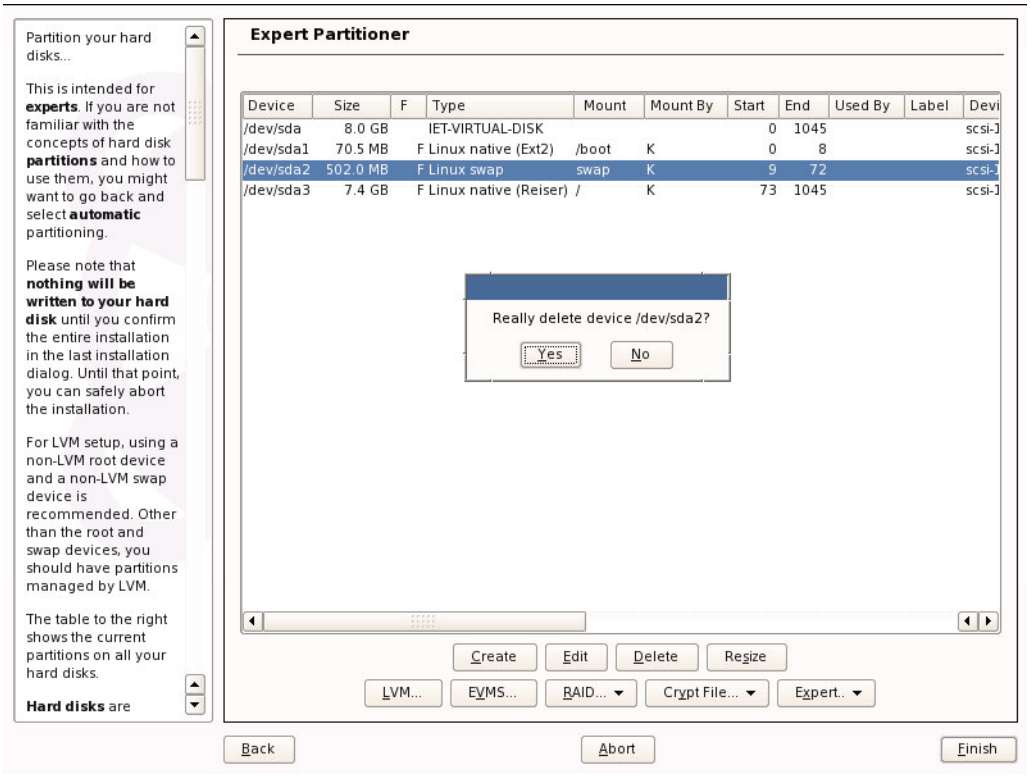
Step 10. In the Installation Settings window, click Partitioning to get the Suggested Partitioning window.



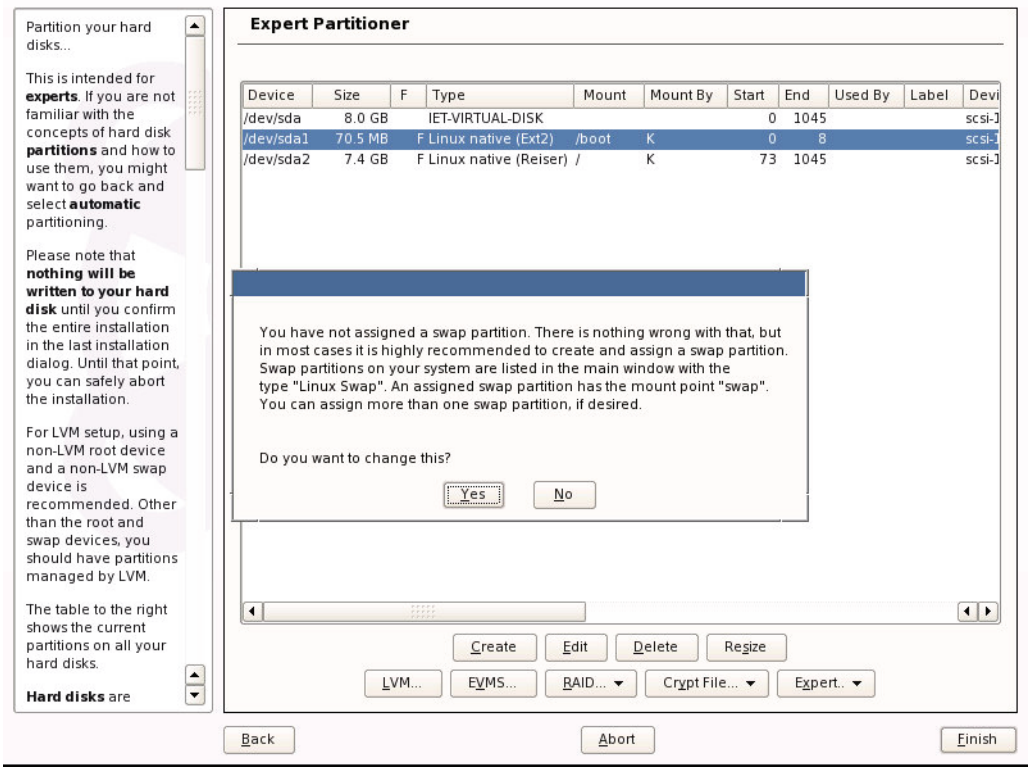
Step 11. Select Base Partition Setup on This Proposal then click Next.


Your hard disks have been checked. The partition setup displayed is proposed for your hard drive.
To accept these suggestions and continue, select Accept Proposal.
If the suggestion does not fit your needs, create your own partition setup starting with the partitions as currently present on the disks. For this, select Custom Partition Setup. This is also the option to choose for advanced options like RAID and LVM.
Suggested Partitioning
Create boot partition /dev/sda1 (70.5 MB) with ext2
Create swap partition /dev/sda2 (502.0 MB)
Create root partition /dev/sda3 (7.4 GB) with reiserfs
Partitioning
Accept Proposal
Base Partition Setup on This Proposal
Create Custom Partition Setup
Back
Abort
Next

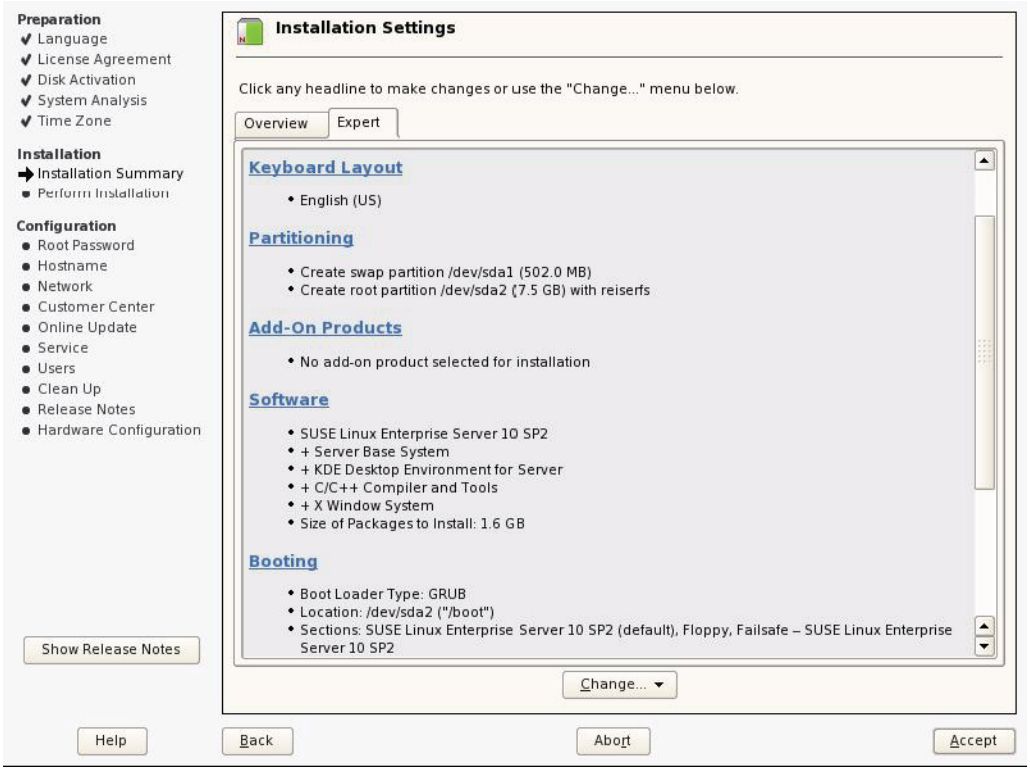
Step 12. In the Expert Partitioner window, select from the IET-VIRTUAL-DISK device the row that has its Mount column indicating ‘swap’, then click Delete. Confirm the delete operation and click Finish.


Partition your hard disks...
This is intended for experts. If you are not familiar with the concepts of hard disk partitions and how to use them, you might want to go back and select automatic partitioning.
Please note that nothing will be written to your hard disk until you confirm the entire installation in the last installation dialog. Until that point, you can safely abort the installation.
For LVM setup, using a non-LVM root device and a non-LVM swap device is recommended. Other than the root and swap devices, you should have partitions managed by LVM.
The table to the right shows the current partitions on all your hard disks.
Hard disks are
Expert Partitioner
Device Size F Type Mount Mount By Start End Used By Label Devi
/dev/sda 8.0 GB IET-VIRTUAL-DISK 0 1045 scsi-1
/dev/sda1 70.5 MB F Linux native (Ext2) /boot K 0 8 scsi-1
/dev/sda2 502.0 MB F Linux swap swap K 9 72 scsi-1
/dev/sda3 7.4 GB F Linux native (Reiser) / K 73 1045 scsi-1
Really delete device /dev/sda2?
Yes
No
Create
Edit
Delete
Resize
LVM...
EVMS...
RAID...
Crypt File...
Expert..
Back
Abort
Finish

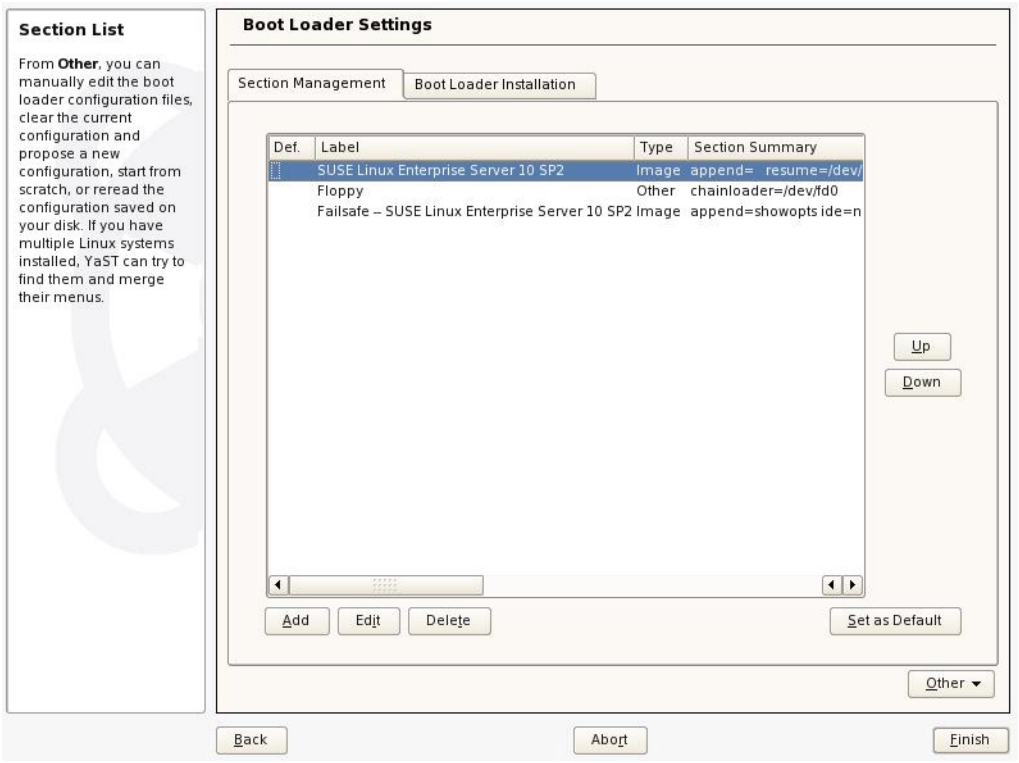
Step 13. In the pop-up window click No to approve deleting the swap partition. You will be returned to Installation Settings window. (See image below.)


Partition your hard disks...
This is intended for experts. If you are not familiar with the concepts of hard disk partitions and how to use them, you might want to go back and select automatic partitioning.
Please note that nothing will be written to your hard disk until you confirm the entire installation in the last installation dialog. Until that point, you can safely abort the installation.
For LVM setup, using a non-LVM root device and a non-LVM swap device is recommended. Other than the root and swap devices, you should have partitions managed by LVM.
The table to the right shows the current partitions on all your hard disks.
Hard disks are
Expert Partitioner
Device Size F Type Mount Mount By Start End Used By Label Devi
/dev/sda 8.0 GB IET-VIRTUAL-DISK 0 1045 scsi-1
/dev/sda1 70.5 MB F Linux native (Ext2) /boot K 0 8 scsi-1
/dev/sda2 7.4 GB F Linux native (Reiser) / K 73 1045 scsi-1
You have not assigned a swap partition. There is nothing wrong with that, but in most cases it is highly recommended to create and assign a swap partition. Swap partitions on your system are listed in the main window with the type "Linux Swap". An assigned swap partition has the mount point "swap". You can assign more than one swap partition, if desired.
Do you want to change this?
Yes
No
Create
Edit
Delete
Resize
LVM...
EVMS...
RAID...
Crypt File...
Expert..
Back
Abort
Finish

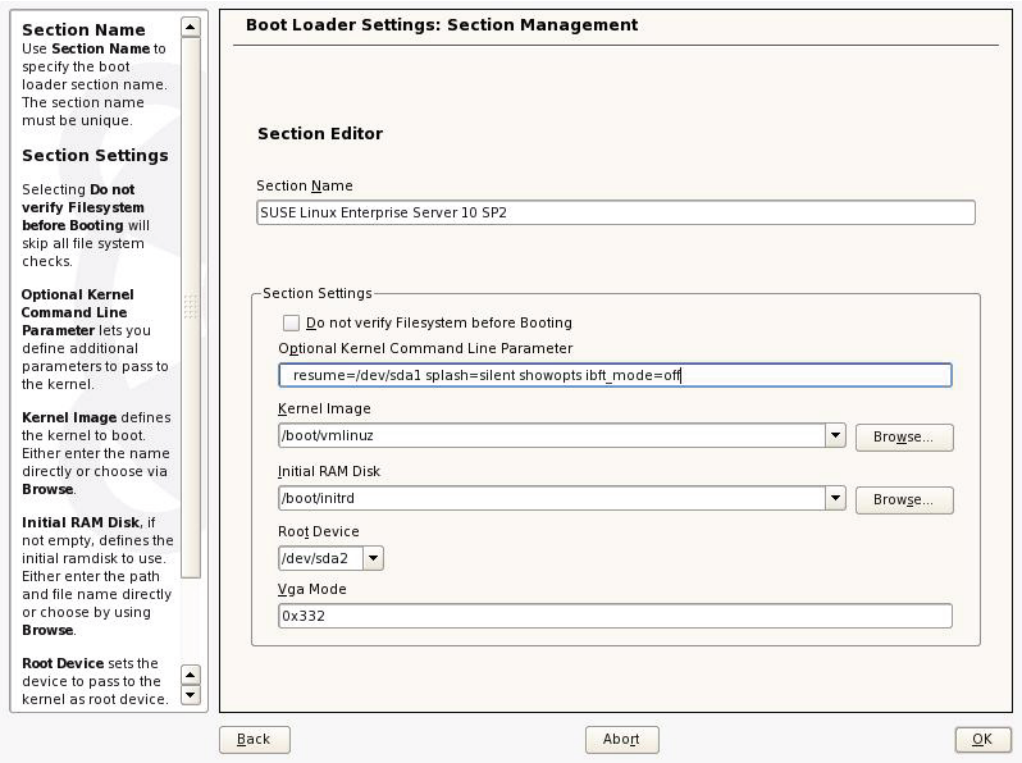
Step 14. Select the Expert tab and click Booting.



Step 15. Click Edit in the Boot Loader Settings window.

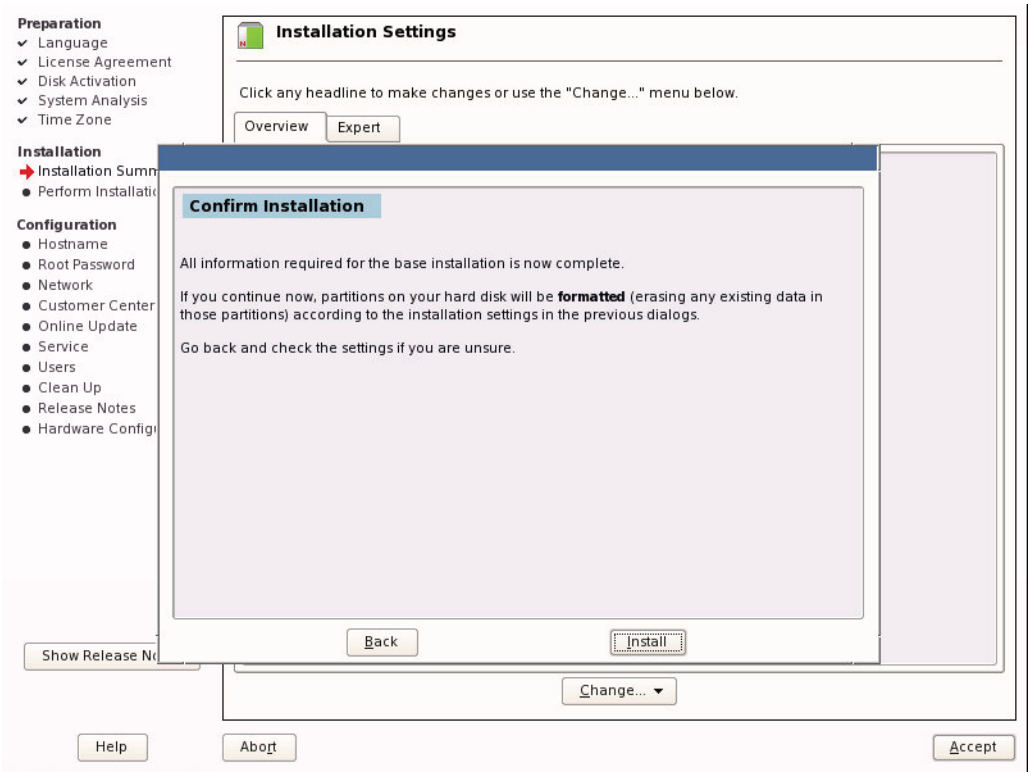


Step 16. In the Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter field, append the following string to the end of the line: "ibft_mode=off" (include a space before the string). Click OK and then Finish to apply the change.


Section Name
Use Section Name to specify the boot loader section name. The section name must be unique.
Section Settings
Selecting Do not verify Filesystem before Booting will skip all file system checks.
Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter lets you define additional parameters to pass to the kernel.
Kernel Image defines the kernel to boot. Either enter the name directly or choose via Browse.
Initial RAM Disk, if not empty, defines the initial ramdisk to use. Either enter the path and file name directly or choose by using Browse.
Root Device sets the device to pass to the kernel as root device.
Boot Loader Settings: Section Management
Section Editor
Section Name
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SP2
Section Settings
Do not verify Filesystem before Booting
Optional Kernel Command Line Parameter
resume=/dev/sda1 splash=silent showopts ibft_mode=off
Kernel Image
/boot/vmlinuz
Browse...
Initial RAM Disk
/boot/initrd
Browse...
Root Device
/dev/sda2
Vga Mode
0x332
Back
Abort
OK

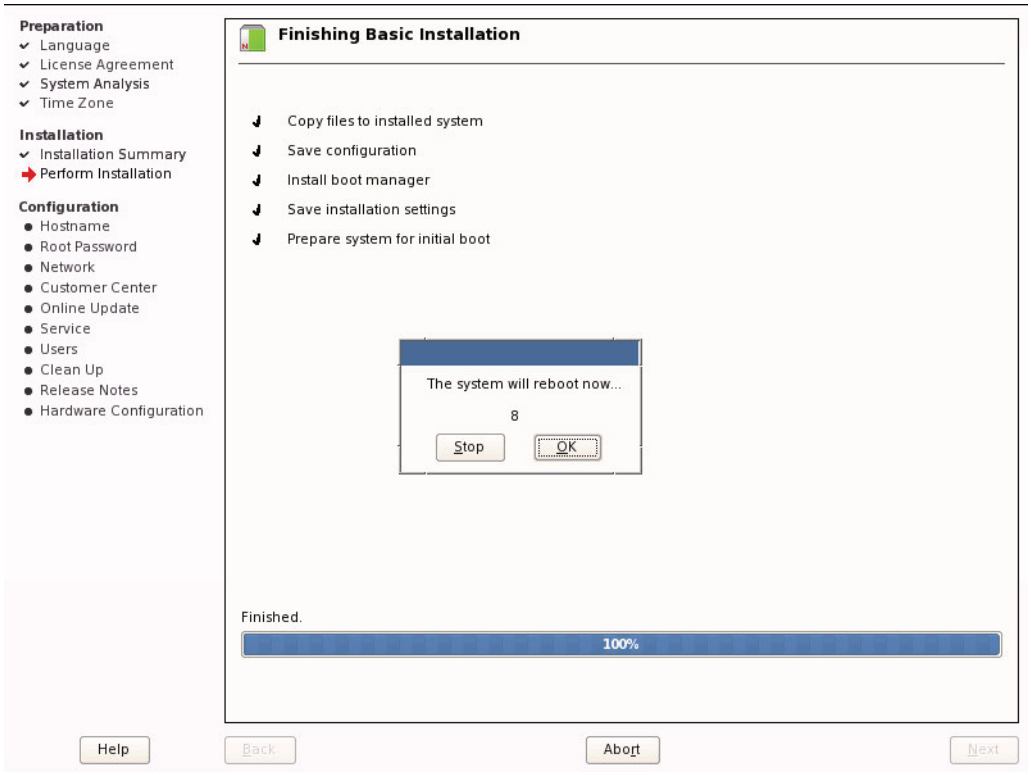
Step 17. If you wish to change additional settings, click the appropriate item and perform the changes, and click Accept when done.

Step 18. In the Confirm Installation window, click Install to start the installation. (See image below.)

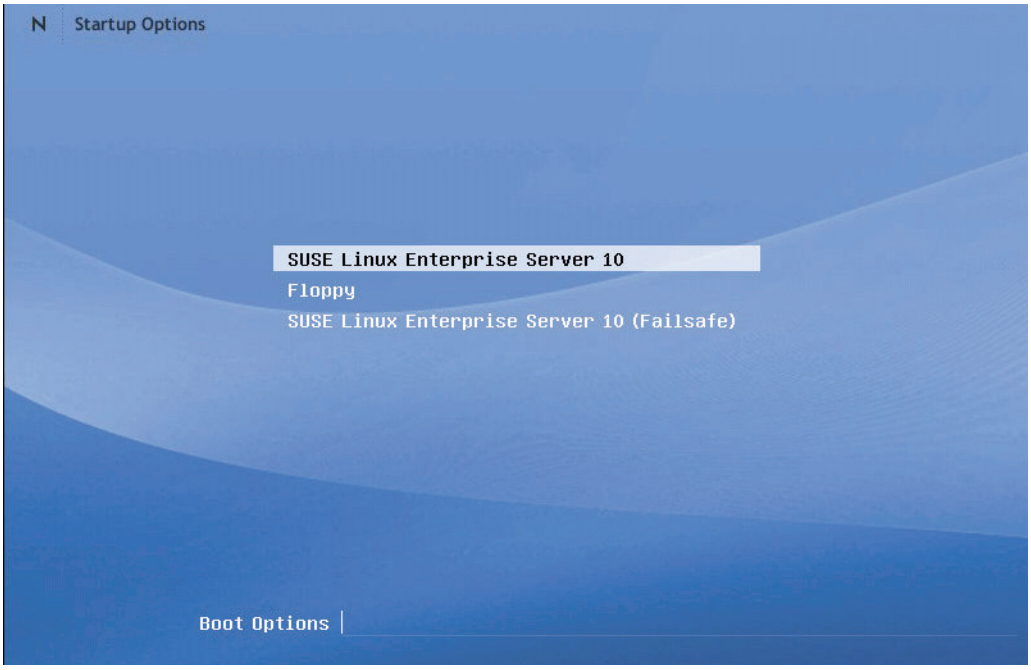


Step 19. At the end of the file copying stage, the Finishing Basic Installation window will pop up and ask for confirming a reboot. You can click OK to skip count-down. (See image below.)

Note: Assuming that the machine has been correctly configured to boot from ConnectX EN PXE via its connection to the iSCSI target, make sure that MLNX_EN has the highest priority in the BIOS boot sequence.



Step 20. Once the boot is complete, the Startup Options window will pop up. Select SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 then press Enter.



Step 21. The Hostname and Domain Name window will pop up. Continue configuring your machine until the operating system is up, then you can start running the machine in normal operation mode.

Step 22. (Optional) If you wish to have the second instance of connecting to the iSCSI Target go through the Ethernet driver, copy the `initrd` file under `/boot` to a new location, add the Ethernet driver into it after the load commands of the iSCSI Initiator modules, and continue as described in Section B.8, on page 230.

Warning! Pay extra care when changing `initrd` as any mistake may prevent the client machine from booting. It is recommended to have a back-up iSCSI Initiator on a machine other than the client you are working with, to allow for debug in case `initrd` gets corrupted.

Next, edit the `init` file (that is in the `initrd` zip) and look for the following string

```
if [ "$iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR" ] ; then
   iscsiserver="$iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR"
fi
```

Now add before the string the following line:

```
iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR=<Ethernet IP Address of iSCSI Target>
```

Example:

```
iSCSI_TARGET_IPADDR=11.4.3.7
```

Also edit the file `/boot/grub/menu.lst` and delete the following string:

```
ibft_mode=off
```

B.11 Windows 2008 iSCSI Boot

ConnectX EN PXE supports booting Windows 2008 from an iSCSI target.

Prerequisites

- Make sure that your client is connected to the server(s)
- The ConnectX EN PXE image is programmed on your adapter card
- Configure and start the DHCP server as described in Section 4.3.1, “IPoIB Configuration Based on DHCP”
- Configure and start at least one of the services iSCSI target (see Section B.9) and TFTP (see Section B.4)

Booting Procedure

The following steps describe the procedure for booting Windows 2008 from an iSCSI target:

Step 1. Install Windows 2008 on a local machine as instructed on the Etherboot Web page: http://etherboot.org/wiki/sanboot/win2k8_physical.

Step 2. Install the MLNX_EN for Windows driver which is part of *Mellanox OFED for Linux*.

Step 3. Prepare an image from your installed partition. The following Web location shows how to do this using a Linux USB key: http://etherboot.org/wiki/sanboot/transfer.

Step 4. Copy the prepared image to the iSCSI target.

Step 5. Make sure that an iSCSI target is installed on your server side.

Tip You can download and install an iSCSI target from the following location: http://sourceforge.net/project/showfiles.php?group_id=108475&package_id=117141

Step 6. Configure your iSCSI target to work with the file copied in Step 4. If, for example, you choose the file name w2k8_boot.img, then edit the iSCSI target configuration file `/etc/ietd.conf` to include the following line under the iSCSI target iqn line:

```
Lun 0 Path=w2k8_boot.img,Type=fileio
```

Tip The following is an example of an iSCSI target iqn line:

```
Target iqn.2007-08.7.3.4.10:iscsiboot
```

B.12 WinPE

Mellanox ConnectX EN PXE enables WinPE boot via TFTP. For instructions on preparing a WinPE image, please see http://etherboot.org/wiki/winpe.

Appendix C: Performance Troubleshooting

C.1 PCI Express Performance Troubleshooting

For the best performance on the PCI Express interface, the adapter card should be installed in an x8 slot with the following BIOS configuration parameters:

- Max_Read_Req, the maximum read request size, is 512 or higher
- MaxPayloadSize, the maximum payload size, is 128 or higher

Note: A Max_Read_Req of 128 and/or installing the card in an x4 slot will significantly limit bandwidth.

To obtain the current setting for Max_Read_Req, enter:

```
setpci -d "15b3:" 68.w
```

To obtain the PCI Express slot (link) width and speed, enter:

```
setpci -d "15b3:" 72
```

1. If the output is neither 81 nor 82 card, then the card is NOT installed in an x8 PCI Express slot.
2. The least significant digit indicates the link speed:
   - 1 for PCI Express Gen 1 (2.5 GT/s)
   - 2 for PCI Express Gen 2 (5 GT/s)

Note: If you are running InfiniBand at QDR (40Gb/s 4X IB ports), you must run PCI Express Gen 2.

C.2 InfiniBand Performance Troubleshooting

InfiniBand (IB) performance depends on the health of IB link(s) and on the IB card type. IB link speed (10Gb/s or SDR, 20Gb/s or DDR, 40Gb/s or QDR) also affects performance.

Note: A latency sensitive application should take into account that each switch on the path adds ~200nsec at SDR, and 150nsec for DDR.

1. To check the IB link speed, enter:

   ```
   ibstat
   ```

   Check the value indicated after the "Rate:" string: 10 indicates SDR, 20 indicates DDR, and 40 indicates QDR.

2. Check that the link has NO symbol errors since these errors result in the re-transmission of packets, and therefore in bandwidth loss. This check should be conducted for each port after the driver is loaded. To check for symbol errors, enter:

```
cat /sys/class/infiniband/<device>/ports/1/counters/symbol_error
```

The command above is performed on Port 1 of the device <device>. The output value should be 0 if no symbol errors were recorded.

3. Bandwidth is expected to vary between systems. It heavily depends on the chipset, memory, and CPU. Nevertheless, the full-wire speed should be achieved by the host.
   - With IB @ SDR, the expected unidirectional full-wire speed bandwidth is ~900MB/sec.
   - With IB @ DDR and PCI Express Gen 1, the expected unidirectional full-wire speed bandwidth is ~1400MB/sec. (See Section C.1.)
   - With IB @ DDR and PCI Express Gen 2, the expected unidirectional full-wire speed bandwidth is ~1800MB/sec. (See Section C.1.)
   - With IB @ QDR and PCI Express Gen 2, the expected unidirectional full-wire speed bandwidth is ~3000MB/sec. (See Section C.1.)

To check the adapter's maximum bandwidth, use the `ib_write_bw` utility.

To check the adapter's latency, use the `ib_write_lat` utility.

Note: The utilities `ib_write_bw` and `ib_write_lat` are installed as part of Mellanox OFED.

C.3 System Performance Troubleshooting

On some systems it is recommended to change the power-saving configuration in order to achieve better performance. This configuration is usually handled by the BIOS. Please contact the system vendor for more information.

Appendix D: ULP Performance Tuning

D.1 IPoIB Performance Tuning

This section provides tuning guidelines of TCP stack configuration parameters in order to boost IPoIB and IPoIB-CM performance.

Without tuning the parameters, the default Linux configuration may significantly limit the total available bandwidth below the actual capabilities of the adapter card. The parameter settings described below will increase the ability of Linux to transmit and receive data.

- Generally, if you increase the MTU (maximum transmission unit in bytes) you get better performance. The following MTUs are suggested (use **`ifconfig`** to modify the MTU):
  - IPoIB 2044 bytes
  - IPoIB-CM 64K bytes
- When IPoIB is configured to run in connected mode, TCP parameter tuning is performed at driver startup to improve the throughput of medium and large messages. The driver startup scripts set the following TCP parameters as follows:

  Note: The following settings should not be applied when running in datagram mode as they degrade the performance.

```
net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps=0
net.ipv4.tcp_sack=0
net.core.netdev_max_backlog=250000
net.core.rmem_max=16777216
net.core.wmem_max=16777216
net.core.rmem_default=16777216
net.core.wmem_default=16777216
net.core.optmem_max=16777216
net.ipv4.tcp_mem="16777216 16777216 16777216"
net.ipv4.tcp_rmem="4096 87380 16777216"
net.ipv4.tcp_wmem="4096 65536 16777216"
```

  If you change the IPoIB run mode to datagram while the driver is running, then the tuned parameters do not get restored to the default values suitable for datagram mode. It is recommended to change the IPoIB mode only while the driver is down (by setting the line "SET_IPOIB_CM=yes" to "SET_IPOIB_CM=no" in the file `/etc/infiniband/openib.conf`, and then restarting the driver).

D.2 Ethernet Performance Tuning

When the `/etc/init.d/openibd` script loads the `mlx4_en` driver, the following network stack parameters are applied:

```
net.ipv4.tcp_timestamps=0
net.ipv4.tcp_sack=0
net.core.netdev_max_backlog=250000
net.core.rmem_max=16777216
net.core.wmem_max=16777216
net.core.rmem_default=16777216
net.core.wmem_default=16777216
net.core.optmem_max=16777216
net.ipv4.tcp_mem=”16777216 16777216 16777216”
net.ipv4.tcp_rmem=”4096 87380 16777216”
net.ipv4.tcp_wmem=”4096 65536 16777216”
```

D.3 MPI Performance Tuning

To optimize bandwidth and message rate running over MVAPICH, you can set tuning paramters either using the command line, or in the configuration file:
`/usr/mpi/<compiler>/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/etc/mvapich.conf`

Tuning Parameters in Configuration File

Edit the `mvapich.conf` file with the following lines:

```
VIADEV_USE_COALESCE=1
VIADEV_COALESCE_THRESHOLD_SQ=1
VIADEV_PROGRESS_THRESHOLD=2
VIADEV_RENDEZVOUS_THRESHOLD=8192
```

Tuning Parameters via Command Line

The following command tunes MVAPICH parameters:

```
host1$ /usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/bin/mpirun_rsh -np 2 \
-hostfile /home/<username>/cluster \
VIADEV_USE_COALESCE=1 VIADEV_COALESCE_THRESHOLD_SQ=1 \
VIADEV_PROGRESS_THRESHOLD=2 \
VIADEV_RENDEZVOUS_THRESHOLD=8192 \
/usr/mpi/gcc/mvapich-<mvapich-ver>/tests/osu_benchmarks-<osu-ver>/osu_bw
```

The example assumes the following:

- A cluster of at least two nodes. Example: host1, host2
- A machine file that includes the list of machines. Example:

```
host1$ cat /home/<username>/cluster
host1
host2
host1$
```

Appendix E: SRP Target Driver

The SRP Target driver is designed to work directly on top of OpenFabrics OFED software stacks (http://www.openfabrics.org) or InfiniBand drivers in Linux kernel tree (kernel.org). It also interfaces with Generic SCSI target mid-level driver - SCST (http://scst.sourceforge.net).

By interfacing with an SCST driver, it is possiblee to work with and support a lot of IO modes on real or virtual devices in the backend.

1. scst_vdisk – fileio and blockio modes. This allows turning software raid volumes, LVM volumes, IDE disks, block devices and normal files into SRP luns
2. NULLIO mode allows measuring the performance without sending IOs to *real* devices

E.1 Prerequisites and Installation

1. For the supported distributions, please see the Mellanox OFED release notes.

   Note: On distribution default kernels you can run scst_vdisk blockio mode to obtain good performance.

2. Download and install the SCST driver. The supported version is 1.0.1.1.
   a. Download `scst-1.0.1.1.tar.gz` from http://scst.sourceforge.net/downloads.html
   b. Untar `scst-1.0.1.1`

   ```
   $ tar zxvf scst-1.0.1.1.tar.gz
   $ cd scst-1.0.1.1
   ```

   c. Install `scst-1.0.1.1 as follows:`

   ```
   $ make && make install
   ```

E.2 How-to run

A. On an SRP Target machine:

1. Please refer to SCST's README for loading scst driver and its dev_handlers drivers (scst_vdisk block or file IO mode, nullio, ...)

   Note: Regardless of the mode, you always need to have lun 0 in any group's device list. Then you can have any lun number following lun 0 (it is not required to have the lun numbers in ascending order except that the first lun must always be 0).

   Note: Setting SRPT_LOAD=yes in /etc/infiniband/openib.conf is not enough as it only loads the `ib_srpt` module but does *not* load `scst` not its dev_handlers.

   Note: The scst_disk module (pass-thru mode) of SCST is not supported by Mellanox OFED.

Example 1: Working with VDISK BLOCKIO mode

(Using the md0 device, sda, and cciss/c1d0)

a. modprobe scst

b. modprobe scst_vdisk

c. echo "open vdisk0 /dev/md0 BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk

d. echo "open vdisk1 /dev/sda BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk

e. echo "open vdisk2 /dev/cciss/c1d0 BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk

f. echo "add vdisk0 0" >/proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices

g. echo "add vdisk1 1" >/proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices

h. echo "add vdisk2 2" >/proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices

Example 2: working with scst_vdisk FILEIO mode

(Using md0 device and file 10G-file)

a. modprobe scst

b. modprobe scst_vdisk

c. echo "open vdisk0 /dev/md0" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk

d. echo "open vdisk1 /10G-file" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk

e. echo "add vdisk0 0" >/proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices

f. echo "add vdisk1 1" >/proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices

2. Run:

```
For all distributions except SLES 11:  > modprobe ib_srpt

For SLES 11:   > modprobe -f ib_srpt
```

Note: For SLES 11, please ignore the following error messages in /var/log/messages when loading ib_srpt to SLES 11 distribution's kernel:

```
...
ib_srpt: no symbol version for scst_unregister
ib_srpt: Unknown symbol scst_unregister
ib_srpt: no symbol version for scst_register
ib_srpt: Unknown symbol scst_register
ib_srpt: no symbol version for scst_unregister_target_template
ib_srpt: Unknown symbol scst_unregister_target_template
...
```

B. On Initiator Machines

On Initiaor machines, manualy perform the following steps:

1. Run:
```
modprobe ib_srp
```
2. Run:
```
ipsrpdm -c -d /dev/infiniband/umadX
```
(to discover a new SRP target)
```
umad0: port 1 of the first HCA
umad1: port 2 of the first HCA
umad2: port 1 of the second HCA
```
3. echo {new target info} > /sys/class/infiniband_srp/srp-mthca0-1/add_target
4. fdisk -l (will show the newly discovered scsi disks)

Example:

Assume that you use port 1 of first HCA in the system, i.e.: mthca0
```
[root@lab104 ~]# ibsrpdm -c -d /dev/infiniband/umad0
id_ext=0002c90200226cf4,ioc_guid=0002c90200226cf4,
dgid=fe8000000000000002c90200226cf5,pkey=ffff,service_id=0002c9020022
6cf4
[root@lab104 ~]# echo
id_ext=0002c90200226cf4,ioc_guid=0002c90200226cf4,
dgid=fe8000000000000002c90200226cf5,pkey=ffff,service_id=0002c9020022
6cf4 > /sys/class/infiniband_srp/srp-mthca0-1/add_target
```

OR

- You can edit /etc/infiniband/openib.conf to load the SRP driver and SRP High Availability (HA) daemon automatically, that is: set "SRP_LOAD=yes" and "SRPHA_ENABLE=yes"
- To set up and use the HA feature, you need the dm-multipath driver and multipath tool
- Please refer to OFED-1.x SRP's user manual for more detailed instructions on how-to enable/use the HA feature

The following is an example of an SRP Target setup file:
```
********************** srpt.sh *******************************
#!/bin/sh
modprobe scst scst_threads=1
modprobe scst_vdisk scst_vdisk_ID=100

echo "open vdisk0 /dev/cciss/c1d0 BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk
echo "open vdisk1 /dev/sdb BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk
echo "open vdisk2 /dev/sdc BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk
echo "open vdisk3 /dev/sdd BLOCKIO" > /proc/scsi_tgt/vdisk/vdisk
echo "add vdisk0 0" > /proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices
echo "add vdisk1 1" > /proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices
echo "add vdisk2 2" > /proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices
echo "add vdisk3 3" > /proc/scsi_tgt/groups/Default/devices
```

```
modprobe ib_srpt

echo "add "mgmt"" > /proc/scsi_tgt/trace_level
echo "add "mgmt_dbg"" > /proc/scsi_tgt/trace_level
echo "add "out_of_mem"" > /proc/scsi_tgt/trace_level
********************** End srpt.sh ****************************
```

E.3 How-to Unload/Shutdown

1. Unload `ib_srpt`
   ```
   $ modprobe -r ib_srpt
   ```
2. Unload `scst` and its dev_handlers first
   ```
   $ modprobe -r scst_vdisk scst
   ```
3. Unload `ofed`
   ```
   $ /etc/rc.d/openibd stop
   ```

Appendix F: mlx4 Module Parameters

In order to set `mlx4` parameters, add the following line(s) to `/etc/modpobe.conf`:

```
options mlx4_core parameter=<value>
```

and/or

```
options mlx4_ib   parameter=<value>
```

and/or

```
options mlx4_en   parameter=<value>
```

and/or

```
options mlx4_fc   parameter=<value>
```

The following sections list the available `mlx4` parameters.

F.1 mlx4_core Parameters

set_4k_mtu	Attempt to set 4K MTU to all ConnectX ports (int)
debug_level	Enable debug tracing if > 0 (default 0)
block_loopback	Block multicast loopback packets if > 0 (default: 1)
msi_x	Attempt to use MSI-X if nonzero (default 1)
log_num_mac	log maximum number of MACs per ETH port (1-7) (int)
use_prio	Enable steering by VLAN priority on ETH ports (0/1, default 0) (bool)
log_num_qp	log maximum number of QPs per HCA (default is 17; max is 20)
log_num_srq	log maximum number of SRQs per HCA (default is 16; max is 20)
log_rdmarc_per_qp	log number of RDMARC buffers per QP (default is 4; max is 7)
log_num_cq	log maximum number of CQs per HCA (default is 16 max is 19)
log_num_mcg	log maximum number of multicast groups per HCA (default is 13; max is 21)
log_num_mpt	log maximum number of memory protection table entries per HCA (default is 17; max is 20)
log_num_mtt	log maximum number of memory translation table segments per HCA (default is 20; max is 20)
log_mtts_per_seg	log number of MTT entries per segment (1-5) (int)
enable_qos	Enable Quality of Service support in the HCA if > 0, default 0)
enable_pre_t11_mode	For FCoXX, enable pre-t11 mode if non-zero (default 0)
internal_err_reset	Reset device on internal errors if non-zero (default 1)

F.2 mlx4_ib Parameters

debug_level	Enable debug tracing if > 0 (default 0)

F.3 mlx4_en Parameters

inline_thold	Threshold for using inline data (default is 128)
tcp_rss	Enable RSS for incoming TCP traffic (default 1 - enabled)
udp_rss	Enable RSS for incoming UDP traffic (default 1 - enabled)
num_lro	Number of LRO sessions per ring or disabled (0) default is 32)
ip_reasm	Allow the assembly of fragmented IP packets (default 1 - enabled)
pfctx	Priority based Flow Control policy on TX[7:0]. Per priority bit mask (default is 0)
pfcrx	Priority based Flow Control policy on RX[7:0]. Per priority bit mask (default is 0)

F.4 mlx4_fc Parameters

log_exch_per_vhba	Max outstanding FC exchanges per virtual HBA (log). Default = 9 (int)
max_vhba_per_port	Max vHBAs allowed per port. Default = 2 (int)

Glossary

The following is a list of concepts and terms related to InfiniBand in general and to Subnet Managers in particular. It is included here for ease of reference, but the main reference remains the *InfiniBand Architecture Specification*.

Channel Adapter (CA), Host Channel Adapter (HCA)

An IB device that terminates an IB link and executes transport functions. This may be an HCA (Host CA) or a TCA (Target CA).

HCA Card

A network adapter card based on an InfiniBand channel adapter device.

IB Devices

Integrated circuit implementing InfiniBand compliant communication.

IB Cluster/Fabric/Subnet

A set of IB devices connected by IB cables.

In-Band

A term assigned to administration activities traversing the IB connectivity only.

LID

An address assigned to a port (data sink or source point) by the Subnet Manager, unique within the subnet, used for directing packets within the subnet.

Local Device/Node/System

The IB Host Channel Adapter (HCA) Card installed on the machine running IBDIAG tools.

Local Port

The IB port of the HCA through which IBDIAG tools connect to the IB fabric.

Master Subnet Manager

The Subnet Manager that is authoritative, that has the reference configuration information for the subnet. See Subnet Manager.

Multicast Forwarding Tables

A table that exists in every switch providing the list of ports to forward received multicast packet. The table is organized by MLID.

Network Interface Card (NIC)

A network adapter card that plugs into the PCI Express slot and provides one or more ports to an Ethernet network.

Standby Subnet Manager

A Subnet Manager that is currently quiescent, and not in the role of a Master Subnet Manager, by agency of the master SM. See Subnet Manager.

Subnet Administrator (SA)

An application (normally part of the Subnet Manager) that implements the interface for querying and manipulating subnet management data.

Subnet Manager (SM)

One of several entities involved in the configuration and control of the subnet.

Unicast Linear Forwarding Tables (LFT)

A table that exists in every switch providing the port through which packets should be sent to each LID.

Virtual Protocol Interconnet (VPI)

A Mellanox Technologies technology that allows Mellanox channel adapter devices (ConnectX®) to simultaneously connect to an InfiniBand subnet and a 10GigE subnet (each subnet connects to one of the adpater ports)